



## **KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN ERNAKULAM REGION**

### **SUPPORT MATERIAL FOR TERM-II, 2021-'22**

#### **CLASS X ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LITERATURE**

#### **OUR MENTORS**



**Shri R Senthil Kumar**

**Deputy Commissioner, KVS RO Ernakulam**



**Smt Deepti Nair  
Assistant Commissioner**



**Shri Santhosh Kumar N  
Assistant Commissioner**

**PRINCIPAL IN-CHARGE: Mrs JAYASREE N, Principal, KV Kanhangad**



**COMPILED BY: Mr Dineshan C, TGT English, KV Kannur**

#### **CORE COMMITTEE MEMBERS**

SL NO	TEACHER
1	<b>Ms. Jothi Verma , KV Thrissur</b>
2	<b>Ms. Suma V P, KV Kanjikode</b>
3	<b>Ms. Rachel Numbay, KV Chenneerkkara</b>
4	<b>Mr. Dineshan C, KV Kannur</b>
5	<b>Ms. Sara Philip, KV No.2, Naval Base Kochi</b>
6	<b>Ms Sona Rani, KV No.1 Palakkad</b>
7	<b>Ms. Indira Nair, KV Rubber Board Kottayam</b>

आर सेन्टिल कुमार  
उपायुक्त

*R. Senthil Kumar*  
Deputy Commissioner



**KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN  
REGIONAL OFFICE,  
ERNAKULAM,  
KOCHI – 682 020**  
Ph. No.0484- 2205111(DC), 2203091(Fax))  
Website: [www.roernakulam.kvs.gov.in](http://www.roernakulam.kvs.gov.in)  
Email : [dcernakulamregion@gmail.com](mailto:dcernakulamregion@gmail.com)

*F.31/Acad/KVS(EKM)*

*Dated: 18.01.2022*

**Message**

*I feel immense pleasure to publish the study material for class X English Language & Literature. This support material is prepared incorporating all the recent changes in curriculum and assessment process made by the CBSE. I am sure it will definitely be of great help to class X students of all Kendriya Vidyalayas.*

*Getting acquainted with the latest changes will help students to prepare well for the board examination and enable students to face case based and Multiple-Choice Questions with confidence. This support material has been prepared by a team of dedicated and veteran teachers with expertise in their respective subjects.*

*I hope that this Support Material will be used by students and teachers effectively and will prove to be a good tool for quick revision.*

*I would like to express my sincere gratitude to the In-charge principal and all the teachers who have relentlessly worked for the preparation of this study material. Their enormous contribution in making this project successful is praiseworthy.*

*Meticulous planning blended with hard work, effective time management and sincerity will help the students to reach the pinnacle of success.*

*Wish you all the best*

*(R Senthil Kumar)*

### LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS

Sl No	Name of the Teacher	Name of the KV	Area Allotted	Name of the Proof Reader	Name of the KV
1	Ms. Misha Madhu Ms. Ajitha P Ms. Nithya Warrier	KV No:2 Naval Base, Kochi	Glimpses of India	Ms. Sara Philip	KV No:2 Naval Base,Kochi
2	Ms. Maneesha R Ms. Jini P	KV Pattom- Shift 2	Madam Rides the Bus	Ms. Suma V P	KV Kanjikode
3	Mr. Sreejith P Ms. Sreeja V J Ms. Arathi Suvindu	KV SAP Peroorkada	The Sermon at Benares Amanda	Ms. Sreepriya P	KV Kanjikode
4	Mr. Mujib Rahman Ms. Chandni	K V Ottapalam	Animals	Ms. Jismi Abdul Khadar	K V Ramavar mapuram
5	Mr. Johnson Mathew M Ms. Divya Devanand	KV No: 1 Palakkad	The Tale of Custard the Dragon	Mr. M.G. Sreeju	KV No: 1 Palakkad
6	Ms. Chandrakha Mr. Rajan Nair	KV Pattom- Shift 1	The Proposal	Ms. Rathi R	KV Kanjikode
7	Ms. Renjini VS Ms. Athira Ms Deepa Nair	K V Akkulam	The Making of a Scientist	Ms. Janaki	K V Ottapalam
8	Ms. Bindu N V Ms. Neethumol	K V Pangod	The Necklace	Ms Rachel Numby	KV Cheenerkkara
9	Ms. Shammy Sukesha Mr. Subhash Vasu	KV CRPF Pallipuram	The Hack Driver	Ms. Priya Sujith	KV Keltron Nagar
10	Ms Sudha Ms. Manju	KV Kollam	Bholi	Ms. Kesavan Rekha	KV Thrissur
11	Ms. Arathi Das Ms.Susan Joseph Ms Asha	KV INS Dronacharya	Reading Comprehension Passages- Discursive (one each)	Mr. Noorudheen	K V Kalpetta
12	Ms. Lavina Guntur Ms. Lakshmi T K Ms. Manisha Menon	KV Port Trust	Reading Comprehension Passages- Case based (one each)	Ms. Annie George	KV Calicut No. 1
13	Ms. Prameela Ms. Bindu MV Ms. Mridula P	KV Idukki KV Ezhimala	Reading Comprehension Passages- Factual (one each)	Ms. Vidya S R	K V Payyanur

14	Mr. Roy Ummen Ms. Beena P K Ms. Kavitha	KV Chennerkara KV Kasargod 2	Letter placing order	Ms. Girija	KV No. 1 Naval Base, Kochi
15	Ms. Shani Joseph Ms. Ms. Sharmila	KV Rubber Board	Letter of Enquiry	Ms. Indira Nair	KV Rubber Board, Kottayam
16	Ms. Sumathy Ms. Roopma Ms. Remya	KV Kadavanthara	Grammar	Ms. Bindu Manikoth	KV Calicut 1
17	Ms Girija Ms Saina Sukumaran Ms. Jyothi C S	KV No. 1 Naval Base, Kochi	Analytical Paragraph	Ms. Joti Verma	KV, Thrissur
18	Ms. Usha MK Ms. Nisha Anoop M	KV Malappuram KV Calicut 2	Sample Paper 1	Ms. Sona Rani	KV No: 1 Palakkad
19	Ms Mini Balachandran Ms. Soniya Joseph	KV Kanhangad KV No:1 CPCRI Kasargod	Sample Paper 2	Mr. Manoj Bhaskar	KV Calicut 1
20	Ms. Priya P K Mr. Sooraj A K	K V Kannur	Sample Paper 3		
21	Mr. Devidas Ms. Remya Mr. Sunil Kumar	KV Thalassery K V Peringome KV Payyanur	Compiling and Technical support	Reading passages Writing and Grammar Literature	
22	Mr. Dineshan C	KV Kannur		Overall co-ordination	

## READING SECTION

### PASSAGE 1

#### CASE BASED FACTUAL PASSAGE

**Q. Read the following passage carefully:**

##### **Being Smart Isn't About the Brain**

‘Use your head’ people often say, when they urge someone to apply their intelligence. But it’s actually the other way around, we think better when we think outside our heads, says science journalist *Annie Murphy Paul* in her book *The Extended Mind: The Power of Thinking Outside Our Brain*. Cognition does not occur merely in the lump of tissue inside our skull. Brain bound thinking is inadequate for complexity of modern life, says the book. We need to recruit extra-neural resources, to listen to feelings and movements of our bodies, the physical spaces in which we learn and work, the minds of the other people around us. This is what brings focus, comprehension and creativity.

When the philosopher Andy Clark lost his laptop on a train in 2007, he experienced it as a sort of disorienting brain damage, prompting him to wonder where the mind ends and the brains begin. This is the ‘extended mind’ hypothesis, much debated since, about how cognition involves unconscious interactions between the brain, body and environment.

Paul’s book gathers all the neuro science, cognitive science and psychology around this idea, shows how it is intuitively practised by artists, scientists, educators, leaders and suggests how we can actually extend our own minds, by understanding embodied cognition, situated cognition and distributed cognition.

First, listen to what your body tells you. Its senses patterns and guides the brain with a tensing of the muscles or a quickening of the breath, a shiver or sign. Being aware of these subtle nudges and prods is interoception. Financial traders who have it make better decisions than those who calculate, and they describe their decision -making as a sort of nameless sensing, like having whiskers or antennae.

Paul recommends shuttling, periodically checking in with one’s physical self in the middle of mental activity, now and then. Research shows that bodily activity and mental acuity are linked- so movements, gestures even standing boosts cognition.

We need others company and stimulation, to think well. The book makes a case for apprenticeship and imitation as a way of extending our minds. Mimicking the masters is a traditional way of learning new skills and making intelligent decisions, because it works.

Paul offers many tips on extending our own minds- offloading thoughts on paper or a device, to make a problem concrete rather than abstract, something that can be touched or tweaked physically, like a board.

The radical takeaway from this book is that intelligence is not a fixed lump, and people are not innately smarter than others. Rather, it is a transaction, a fluid interaction between our brains, our bodies, our spaces and our relationships.

(Article courtesy: The Times of India, 18 December 2021)

**Based on your understanding of the passage, answer the following questions by choosing the correct option.**

1. Which of the following idea is **not supported** by Annie Paul in her book?
  - (a) Cognition involves unconscious interactions between the brain, body and environment.
  - (b) Cognition merely occur in the lump of tissue inside our skull.
  - (c) Brainbound thinking is inadequate for complexity of modern life.
  - (d) How our minds can be trained by understanding embodied, situated and distributed cognition.
2. What do you mean by the idiom “ Use your head”?
  - (a) To think carefully in order to understand something.
  - (b) to remain calm and composed.
  - (c) Pride yourself on something and congratulate yourself.
  - (d) To be a credit to someone.
3. ‘Extended mind’ refers to
  - (a) cognitive interactions between brain, body and environment.
  - (b) tensing of muscles or quickening of breath.
  - (c) engaging the different body patterns.
  - (d) brainbound thinking.
4. According to the passage, ----- is considered to be a long-established method for mastering new skills to decide wisely.
  - (a) offloading thought
  - (b) mimicking the masters
  - (c) Shuttling
  - (d) checking intermittently
5. Pick out a word from the passage that is similar to “causing a feeling of confusion”.
  - (a) Prompting (b) extending (c) overwhelming (d) disorienting
6. “ Financial traders who have it make better decision....” Here ‘it’ refers to

- (a) Whiskers
- (b) patterns
- (c) interoception
- (d) interactive

7. According to a research , there is an inter-relation between bodily activity and

- (a) Creativity
- (b) understanding
- (c) mental acuity.
- (d) Stimulation.

8. The takeaway from this passage is..... .

- (a) Intelligence has a fixed parameter.
- (b) cognition is always imitation.
- (c) complexity of modern life.
- (d) intelligence is transaction between our brain and body.

Complete the following sentences by filling the blanks using suitable words.

9. Different ..... , ..... , including standing boosts cognition.

10. We require to engage extra-neural resources to enhance focus, ..... and .....

11. Offloading thoughts on a paper or a device make a problem ..... rather than .....

12. Paul's book advocates how we can actually extend our own minds by comprehending ..... , situated and ..... cognition.

### **ANSWER KEY**

**Based on your understanding of the passage, answer the following questions by choosing the correct option.**

- 1.(b) Cognition merely occur in the lump of tissue inside our skull.
- 2.(a) To think carefully in order to understand something.
- 3.(a) cognitive interactions between brain, body and environment.
- 4.(b) mimicking the masters
- 5.(d) disorienting
- 6.(c) interoception
- 7.(c) mental acuity
- 8.(d) intelligence is transaction between our brain and body.

**Complete the following sentences by filling the gaps with suitable words.**

- 9. movements , gestures
- 10. comprehension , creativity

11.concrete , abstract

12. embodied , distributed

## PASSAGE 2

### **Reading passage (Factual)**

Coronaviruses are a family of viruses that can cause respiratory illness in humans. They are called “corona” because of crown-like spikes on the surface of the virus. Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS) and the common cold are examples of coronaviruses that cause illness in humans. The new strain of coronavirus — COVID-19 — was first reported in Wuhan, China in December 2019. The virus has since spread to all continents.

COVID-19 enters your body through your mouth, nose or eyes (directly from the airborne droplets or from transfer of the virus from your hands to your face). The virus travels to the back of your nasal passages and mucous membrane in the back of your throat. It attaches to cells there, begins to multiply and moves into lung tissue. From there, the virus can spread to other body tissues.

Coronaviruses are often found in bats, cats and camels. The viruses live in but do not infect the animals. Sometimes these viruses then spread to different animal species. The viruses may change (mutate) as they transfer to other species. Eventually, the virus can jump from animal species and begins to infect humans. In the case of COVID-19, the first people infected in Wuhan, China are thought to have contracted the virus at a food market that sold meat, fish and live animals. Although researchers don't know exactly how people were infected, they already have evidence that the virus can be spread directly from person to person through close contact.

COVID-19 is diagnosed with a laboratory test. Your healthcare provider may collect a sample of your saliva or swab your nose or throat to send for testing.

Treatments for COVID-19 vary depending on the severity of your symptoms. In mild cases, common treatment includes adequate rest, hydration, anti-pyretic and home isolation. If you're not in the hospital or don't need supplemental oxygen, no specific antiviral or immunotherapy is recommended. Some people may also benefit from an infusion of monoclonal antibodies.

Depending on the severity of your COVID infection, the patient may need Supplemental oxygen, Mechanical ventilation (receive oxygen through a tube inserted down your trachea), Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO).

But if you're in the hospital, you may be given IV remdesivir with or without the oral (by mouth) corticosteroid dexamethasone (or another steroid) or dexamethasone alone if remdesivir can't be used.

### **Answer the multiple-choice questions**

1)Corona virus got its name from

- A) rod like projections
- B) crown-like spikes on the surface
- C) round knobs
- D) racket like protuberances

2) The examples of corona virus are all except-

- A) SARS
- B) MERS
- C) SIRS
- D) Common cold

3) Covid 19 was first reported in

- A) Wuhan, China
- B) Cairo, Egypt
- C) Hiroshima, Japan
- D) California, America

4) COVID-19 enters your body through all except

- A) Mouth
- B) Nose
- C) Eyes
- D) Ears

5) Select the correct statement about corona virus from the following

- A) Virus can infect and cause disease in animals
- B) Virus only lives in animals, without infecting them
- C) Virus can neither live in animals nor infect them
- D) All the above are correct

6) The first infected cases of corona virus are thought to have contracted the virus at

- A) Foot ware market
- B) Food market
- C) Supermarket
- D) Stock market

7) Common sites for sampling corona virus include all except

- A) Throat
- B) Eyes
- C) Nose
- D) Mouth

8) Select the full form of SARS

- A) Selective Airway reversal syndrome
- B) Severe Acute Renal syndrome
- C) Severe Acute Respiratory syndrome
- D) Severe Adverse Respiratory syndrome

9)Treatments for COVID-19 vary depending on

- A) Patient's choice
- B) Pressure from relatives
- C)High profile status of patient
- D)Severity of symptoms

10)Treatment for Covid-19 include all except

- A) Supplemental oxygen
- B) Remdesivir
- C) Corticosteroid
- D) Progesterone

### **Answer the following questions**

1) Coronaviruses are a family of viruses that can cause \_\_\_\_\_

2) Animals in which Coronavirus is commonly found include \_\_\_\_\_

3) Find another word used to describe “change” in virus from third paragraph

4)Describe Mechanical ventilation

5)Common treatment in mild cases of covid infection includes

### **Answer Key**

#### **MCQ**

- 1) B- crown-like spikes on the surface
- 2) C-SIRS
- 3) A-Wuhan, China
- 4) D-Ears
- 5) B-Virus only lives in animals, without infecting them
- 6) B-Food market
- 7) B-Eyes
- 8) C-Severe Acute Respiratory syndrome
- 9) D-Severity of symptoms
- 10)D- Progesterone

#### **VSAQ**

- 1)respiratory illness in humans
- 2)bats, cats and camels
- 3)mutate
- 4)receive oxygen through a tube inserted down your trachea
- 5)adequate rest, hydration, anti-pyretic and home isolation.

### **PASSAGE 3**

### **CASE BASED AND FACTUAL PASSAGE WITH MCQ AND VSAQs**

**Read the following passages carefully:**

### The Way Human Body Defends

1. The defence mechanism of human body is a gift of nature provided to human beings. The power of our body to fight against various disease-producing agents is known as defensive mechanism. This defensive mechanism depends upon various factors which can be categorised mainly into two types—common factors and special factors.
2. Amongst the common factors, the most important is the health of human beings. We all know if we are having a good health, our body automatically remains protected against the diseases. For keeping good health one should have nutritious balanced diet. A balanced diet is that which contains carbohydrates, fat, proteins, vitamins in proportionate amount.
3. The skin of our body saves us against many micro-organisms producing diseases, provided that it is intact. In case there are cuts or abrasions on it, the micro-organisms penetrate the body through those cuts and abrasions and can cause diseases. Therefore, a cut or an abrasion should never be left open. In case there is no bandage, linen etc. available, it may be covered by a clean cloth.
4. Some bacteria are residing on and inside the human body. They are our friends and are useful for us. They do not cause any disease and by their presence they do not allow disease-causing organisms to settle on those places. For example, the micro-organisms, present in human saliva secrete a chemical which does not allow diphtheria causing bacteria to grow inside the oral cavity.
5. The human body secretes a variety of fluids, which are killers for disease causing micro-organisms. For example, gastric juice (acidic in nature) secreted by our intestinal tract kills all organisms which enter our body through food.
6. There are a few automatic activities of our body known as “reflex phenomenon” which protect the body against many infections. This reflex phenomenon includes sneezing, coughing and vomiting. •
7. Fever is one of the most important constituents of the defensive mechanism of our body. The organ which regulates the temperature of our body is known as hypothalamus and it is situated in the brain. When micro-organisms after entering the body release toxic products and these reach the brain through blood, the hypothalamus starts increasing the temperature of body the person gets fever. This fever is very useful for the human body because by the increase of temperature the micro-organisms which are the root cause of the problem get killed.

8. We are living in an environment which is full of bacteria. Many of these bacteria can produce serious diseases, but all of us do not suffer from such diseases. It is due to a special power present in our body to fight these diseases. A part of this special power of our body is known as innate immunity. This is inherited by us. The other part of this special power is called acquired immunity. This we gain during our lifetime.
9. In a nutshell, we can say since nature has provided us with defensive mechanism to fight against so many diseases, let us maintain it and rather increase it by the way of immunisation.

A. Answer the following questions by choosing the most appropriate option:

1. **One should have nutritious balanced diet because.....**
  - (a) it has food items for various tastes
  - (b) it keeps one healthy
  - (c) it is recommended by a dietician
  - (d) it has all essential items
2. **The defence mechanism of human body is important as.....**
  - (a) it protects us from diseases
  - (b) it checks deterioration of body
  - (c) it saves us from depression
  - (d) it builds up the wear and tear
3. **In order to check the micro-organisms penetration in the human body.....**
  - (a) we must cover the whole body
  - (b) we must rub insect repelling oil
  - (c) we must use antiseptic solutions
  - (d) we should keep cuts and abrasions covered
4. **Gastric juice secreted by our intestinal tract kills all extraneous organisms as.....**
  - (a) it flows very fast
  - (b) it is acidic in nature
  - (c) it prevents their multiplication
  - (d) it is a natural stimulant
5. **We can increase our defensive mechanism by.....**
  - (a) developing friendly bacteria
  - (b) checking infection through reflex phenomenon

- (c) seeking proper immunisation
- (d) suppressing fever in initial stages

6. (d) **suppressing fever in initial stages is .....**

- (a) blood poisoning
- (b) study of poisons
- (c) harmful bacteria in plants/animals
- (d) poisonous

**B. Answer the following questions in brief:**

7. Differentiate between innate immunity and acquired immunity?
8. What is the main idea conveyed in paragraph 7?
9. What do you mean by reflex phenomenon? How is it helpful for human body?
10. Give the similar meanings.
  - (a) scraping or rubbing of (para 3)
  - (b) poisonous (para 7)
  - (c) inborn (para 8)

Answers:

1. (b) it keeps one healthy
2. (a) it protects us from diseases.
3. (d) we should keep cuts and abrasions covered
4. (b) it is acidic in nature
5. (c) seeking proper immunisation
6. (d) poisonous
7. Special power of our body to fight diseases is innate immunity. It is inherited by us.  
Power which we acquire during our lifetime is acquired immunity.
8. Fever is very useful for the human body. It is one of the most important constituents of the defensive mechanism. Hypothalamus, an organ in the brain, regulates the temperature of our body. Fever is very useful for the human body because by the increase of temperature the micro-organisms which are the root cause of the problem get killed.
9. few automatic activities of our body are known as reflex phenomenon which protect the body against many infections.

10. (a) Abrasions  
(b) Toxic  
(c) innate

## PASSAGE 4

### DISCURSIVE PASSAGE

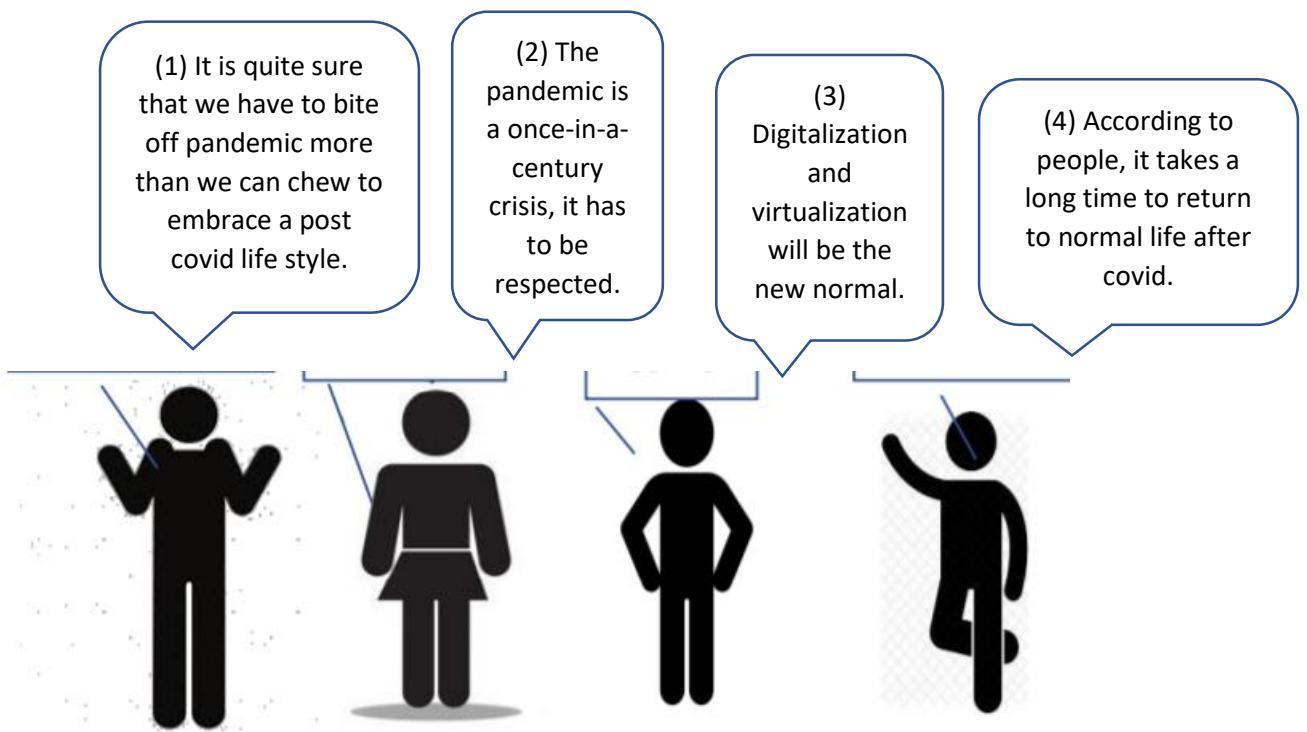
**Read the passage given below.**

#### **Life after Covid-19**

1. The second wave of Covid-19 has come to an end and there is a talk about the third wave. We don't know how many waves are still out there but as more people are getting vaccinated pandemic has to bite the dust and we have to bite off more than we can chew to embrace a post-Covid lifestyle.
2. Life after Covid-19 will not only be stretched up to bringing home the beacon, it will also embrace a new culture in which orthodox thinking will be thrown away. Digitalization and virtualization will be the new normal. Different work modes like remote working, hybrid working, and three model workings will be there. While outings along with the terms and conditions, a long list of precautions will be added. 'Sustainable, recyclable, hygiene, sanitization' will be the new terms instead of using traditional terms like 'discounts/sales'.
3. Healthy products will be on the shelf, shake hands will be replaced by Namaste and identity proof with a document indicating our health status for international tours will be mandatory. You may see autonomous machines like robots, drones at your services. Instead of booking a ticket for a cinema or drama, a new menu saying "buy/rent" will pop up. In restaurants, you will now be welcomed with a sanitizer. Travel will explode after the pandemic.
4. The future will be brighter than we imagine, but along with its challenges—many of them potentially multiplied such as income polarization, galloping unemployment, as a result of inflation. The worker vulnerability, gig work, and the need for workers to adapt to occupational transitions may arise. This acceleration is the result of new considerations for health and safety.
5. For a post-Covid lifestyle, a balance between optimism and pessimism is a must. People feel that it takes a long time to return to normal life, but there is a catch here. Life is proportional to the time, there wasn't and there will never be a return. Our lifestyle defines our definition of life and circumstances define our lifestyle. So, better prepare for the next unknown.
6. Remember, present and future are the hostages of the past. As time goes, we have to recall our past equipped with rich experiences to get the right direction at the right time. Speed without direction leads to destruction.
7. Are we capable of living in a post -Covid world? Are we able to maintain the good habits which we had harboured during the pandemic and recall them whenever it's necessary? The pandemic is a once-in-a-century crisis, it has to be respected and whatever we learn from that should be kept for a long term.

**On the basis of your understanding of the above passage, answer the questions suitably.**

1. ‘We are using a traditional approach to revive Indian culture.’ Find out the synonym of the underlined word from the 2<sup>nd</sup> paragraph.
2. Pick and write the line that indicates that ‘there will be a ‘new world’ in which the concept of ‘back to basic’ rooted in Indian culture will be returned.
3. Pick the options that correctly classifies fact/s (F) and opinion/s (O) of the people below.

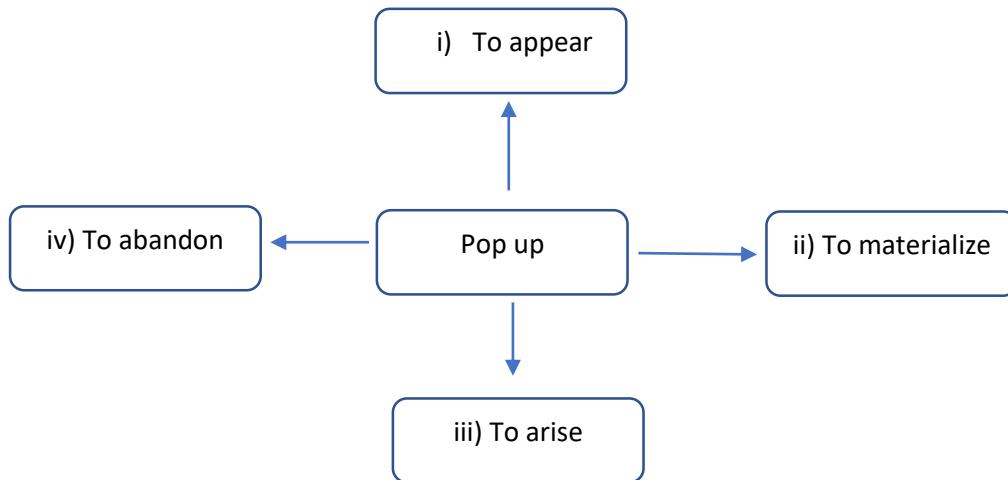


4. Choose the options that is NOT TRUE.

Post Covid-19 period may witness occupational transitions due to \_\_\_\_\_.

- i) Health issues
- ii) Safety precautions
- iii) Technological advancement
- iv) Growth of labour market

5. Pick the option that represents the ODD one with reference to the meaning of ‘pop up’.



**Based on your understanding of the passage, choose the correct option.**

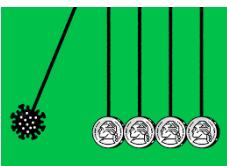
6. The speaker in the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) Optimistic
  - b) Sceptical
  - c) Pessimistic
  - d) Horrifying
7. The writer in the passage urges the reader to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) adjust with the present covid crisis.
  - b) pine for what is not.
  - c) groom oneself for facing a new dawn.
  - d) to wait for the normal life to return.
8. ‘Speed without direction’ in Para 6 means \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) Going ahead without present circumstances.
  - b) Going ahead without purpose
  - c) Going ahead without unlimited plan
  - d) Going ahead without multiple aims.
9. Identify the sentence that DOES NOT use the synonym of the word ‘flout’.
  - a) They believe it is essential to defy conventions.
  - b) The mob disregarded companies’ rules.
  - c) He looked at me with scorn.
  - d) The employees amicably agreed with the new norms of the company.
10. Choose the best emoticon which highlights the mood of the reader after reading first paragraph.
 

a)  b)  c)  d) 

11. What is the message conveyed in the last paragraph of the passage?

- a) Be the best version of yourself.
- b) Maintain good habits to face pandemic.
- c) Remember the lessons learnt and be focussed.
- d) The need to follow covid protocols.

12. Choose the option that includes the display of ‘inflation’ based on the given images.

- a) 
- b) 
- c) 
- d) 

## ANSWERS

1. Orthodox (Orthodox is the synonym of traditional.)
2. Shake hands will be replaced by Namaste. (An act of advisable act rooted on Indian culture)
3. F – 1,3 and O – 2,4 (In 1st statement – ‘Quite sure’ indicates ‘surety’ and 3rd statement is in assertion tone.)
4. (iii) and (iv) (It is clearly mentioned in the passage that workers have to adapt to occupational transitions as we have to consider health and safety.)
5. (iv) To abandon (‘To abandon’ is the antonym of ‘Pop up’.)
6. (a) Optimistic (The passage clearly mentions the post covid life style with lots of positive changes.)
7. (c) groom oneself for facing a new dawn. (The writer emphasises on a new life style after covid.)
8. (b) Going ahead without purpose (Going without proper direction. It is natural to lead to destruction. Hence proper direction is required.)
9. (d) The employees amicably agreed with the new norms of the company. (Amicably means ‘cordially/ harmoniously’.)
10. (a) suits best as there is reference to crisis and also possibilities to come out of it.
11. (c) Remember the lessons learnt and be focussed. (The writer focuses on the possibility of living in a post covid world by remembering the lessons learned during pandemic.)
12. (c) The term ‘inflation’ means ‘steady rise in prizes’

## PASSAGE 5

### DISCURSIVE PASSAGE

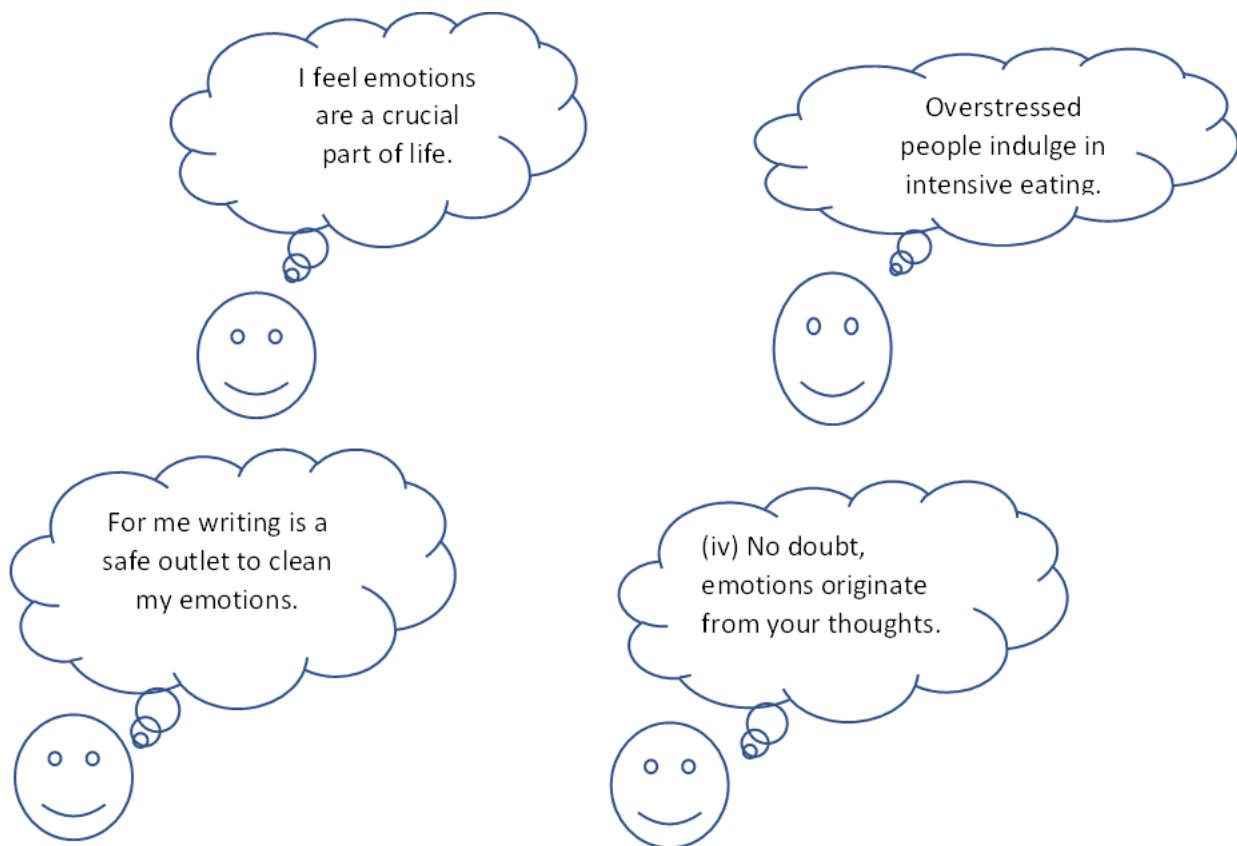
#### **Stop Being a Slave to Your Emotions**

1. Many people describe themselves as emotional as they are ‘slaves’ to their emotions. If you are one of them, start working on it. You have the ability to control your emotions and mood. Train yourself to manage your emotions, dominate them and utilize them to make your life pleasant.
2. Being emotional and responding to the ‘heart’- both can be great attributes for human beings. Openness to feelings allows you to be self-conscious and it also helps you connect with others. Yet, if you let your emotions dictate how to live and how to behave, it can lead to disappointment. Too much slavery to emotions may have a negative impact on your relationships and personal health.
3. All emotions rise from your thoughts. Being too emotional can make you a person with low self-esteem. Your emotions may start taking control of your life. Manage your emotions and become their master rather than allowing them to be your master.
  
4. **‘Emotional Detachment’ is the Way-** The human brain is packed with multifarious thoughts, many negative and very few positive. These thoughts lead to emotions. Do not give in to each thought that comes to your mind. Learn to detach from your thoughts through mindful meditation. And then ‘emotional detachment’ will come naturally. Just remember, your emotions are mere thoughts in your mind that can’t interfere with your actions.
5. **Stay ‘Conscious’ of your Emotions-** Understand why you react to a situation in a particular way to lessen the effect of that situation on your senses. Boiling down to the valid reasons behind your emotions will lead to a happier life. Know that emotions are a crucial part of life; it’s what you do with them that can create a good or bad situation. For example, if you are feeling anxious, you may indulge in impulsive eating. As a result, you may gain weight. Your self-esteem may suffer and become a slave to your emotion.
6. **Note Them Down -** Writing creates a beautiful channel for your mind to clean out your emotions. Pen down your feelings and also try to decipher the surface-level thoughts.

7. **Practice daily positive affirmations-** Do not forget the power of positive affirmations. Whenever a negative emotion arises, take the help of positive affirmation. Adopt a life mantra, a positive affirmation for yourself and chant it tirelessly.
8. It is important to know that you are not just a slave to those emotions that run through your mind & heart. You are their master. So, take charge of your emotions through rationality, conscience, and positive affirmations; be bold and live courageously. It is more precious than all the wealth of the world!

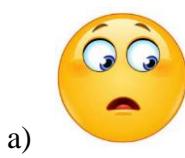
**On the basis of your understanding of the above passage, answer the questions suitably.**

1. ‘India is a composite of diverse traditions and people.’ Identify the synonym of the underlined word from the passage. (para. 4).
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is a magical wand that will improve our better mental state other than emotional detachment.
3. “It is more precious than all the wealth of the world.” What does ‘it’ refer to here?
4. Which of the following statements are NOT TRUE with regard to emotional detachment.
  - i) Believe in everything you think.
  - ii) Mindful meditation can clear negative thoughts.
  - iii) Emotional detachment is the result of a deliberate attempt.
  - iv) Human brain is dominated with few positive thoughts.
5. Pick the option that correctly classifies fact/s (F) and opinion/s (O) of the students below.



**Based on your understanding of the passage, choose the correct option.**

6. Choose the option that best captures the central idea of the passage from the given quotes.
  - a) Feelings are just visitors. Let them come and go.
  - b) Feelings and emotions vary from person to person
  - c) Never let your emotions, overpower your intelligence.
  - d) Your thoughts and emotions are yours alone.
7. The author attempts to \_\_\_\_\_ the readers through this write-up.
  - a) guide
  - b) question
  - c) criticise
  - d) rebuke
8. If you do not master your emotions responding to the heart, you are likely to become \_\_\_\_\_
  - a) fickle minded.
  - b) stressful.
  - c) anxious
  - d) all of the above
9. Raju is a slave to his own emotions. Pick the emoticon that DOES NOT match with his expression.



shutterstock.com - 172653926

10. The content of the passage best suits for \_\_\_\_\_ magazine.

- a) Psychological Help
- b) Women's Health
- c) Science Reporter
- d) Food Lovers

11. Identify the most likely tone of the writer in the line – “You have the ability to control your emotions and mood.”

- a) Sarcastic and absurd
- b) Aggressive and indifferent
- c) Appreciative and assertive
- d) Humorous and amused

12. Choose the option that gives the most appropriate response to the statement made by the speaker.



- a) I feel it is easy to dominate our emotions.
- b) In my opinion, emotions are not capable of dominating us.
- c) For me, Slavery to emotions affect social and mental well being.
- d) I feel it will lead to a great disaster.

## ANSWERS

1. Multifarious (The word 'diverse' means 'multifarious').
2. Positive affirmation (It will help to overcome dullness)

3. Emotions (Managing emotion is the core content of the passage.)
4. (i) and (iv) (As per the paragraph sub-titled as Emotional Detachment)
5. F- (ii), (iv) and O – (i), (iii) -- (Facts are presented with assertion tone, in opinions first person narration given)
6. (c)Never let your emotions, overpower your intelligence. (The whole passage revolves around the idea of controlling emotions.)
7. a) guide (The writer provides tips to be a master of our emotions.)
8. d) all of the above (It is clearly mentioned in the passage that if one fails to control emotions, it will lead to suggested mental ill health.)
9. (c) A person who is a slave to his own emotions will always be sad, depressed and anxious.
10. (a) Psychological Help (Content related to human mind and emotions.)
11. (c)Appreciative and assertive (The line highlights mood of instilling hope in intrinsic qualities as a human being.)
12. (c) For me, Slavery to emotions affect social and mental well being. (We can only manage our emotions being human.)

## PASSAGE 6

### **DISCURSIVE PASSAGE**

#### **Read the passage and answer the following questions:**

While the British rule in India was detrimental to the economic development of the country, it did help in starting the process of modernizing Indian society and formed several progressive institutions during that process. One of the most beneficial institutions which were initiated by the British, was democracy. Despite its many shortcomings, democracy was and is far better alternative to the arbitrary rule of the Rajas and Nawabs, which prevailed in India in the pre-British days.

However, one of the harmful traditions of British democracy inherited by India was that of conflict instead of cooperation between elected members. The party, which got support of the majority of elected members, formed the government while the others constituted standing opposition. The existence of the opposition to those in power was and is regarded as the hallmark of democracy.

In principle, democracy consists of rule by the people; but where direct rule is not possible, it's ruled by persons elected by the people. It is natural that there would be some differences of opinion among the elected members as in the rest of the society.

Normally, members of any organizations have difference of opinion between themselves on different issues but they manage to work on the basis of a consensus and they do not normally

form a division between some who are in majority and are placed in power, while treating the others in opposition.

The members of an organization usually work on consensus. Consensus simply means that after an adequate discussion, members agree that the majority opinion may prevail for the time being. Thus, persons who form a majority on one issue and whose opinion is allowed to prevail may not be on the same side if there is a difference on some other issue.

It was largely by accident that instead of this normal procedure, a two-party system came to prevail in Britain and that is now being generally taken as the best method of democratic rule. Many democratically inclined persons in India regret that such a two-party system was not brought about in the country. It appears that to have two parties in India- of more or less equal strength- is a virtual impossibility. Those who regret the absence of a two-party system should take the reasons into consideration.

When the two-party system got established in Britain, there were two groups among the rulers (consisting of a limited electorate) who had the same economic interests among themselves and who therefore formed two groups within the selected members of parliament. They were members of the British aristocracy (which landed interest and consisting of lord, baron etc.) and members of the new commercial class consisting of merchants and artisans.

### **I. Choose the correct option for the following MCQs**

1. During pre-British period, when India was ruled by the independent rulers:
  - (A) Peace and prosperity prevailed in the society
  - (B) People were isolated from political affairs
  - (C) Public opinion was inevitable for policy-making
  - (D) Law was equal for one and all
2. What is the distinguishing feature of the democracy practiced in Britain?
  - (A) End to the rule of might is right
  - (B) Rule of the people by the people and for the people.
  - (C) It has stood the test of time
  - (D) Cooperation between elected members.
3. Which of the following is *true* about the British rule in India?
  - (A) It lagged behind the modern Indian society
  - (B) India gained economically during that period
  - (C) Various establishments were formed for the purpose of progress

(D) None of these

4. Democracy is practiced where:

(A) Elected members form a uniform opinion regarding policy matter.

(B) Opposition is more powerful than the ruling combine.

(C) elected members are people's representatives

(D) None of these

5. Choose the option which best defines the word **detrimental**?

(A) certain

(B) damaging

(C) doubtful

(D) meaningful

## **II. Answer the following questions in ONE or TWO sentences**

6. What is generally considered as the best method of democratic rule?

7. What feature contributes most to the uniqueness of democracy?

8. In a democracy, what method is usually adopted for conflict resolution?

9. Do you feel that the author is a blind worshipper of British colonialism in India? Why?

10. The two- party system in Britain is considered as the best form of democracy. Who were the members of the two-party system?

### **Answer Key**

1. B

2. D

3. C

4. C

5. B

6. The two-party system in Britain is considered as the best method of democratic rule.

7. The existence of an opposition to the ruling party is regarded as the unique feature of democracy.

8. After an adequate discussion, members arrive at a consensus that the majority opinion may prevail for the time being. This method is used for conflict resolution in a democracy.

9. No. The author lauds British for introducing democracy but condemns them for the economic drain.

10. Members of the aristocracy and members of the merchant and artisans class.

## WRITING SECTION

### LETTER OF ENQUIRY

It is a letter written to enquire about information related to something. It can be written if a person wants to buy an item, get enrolled for a course, book a room in a hotel, wants to go on a trip etc. The objective of the Letter of Enquiry is to make a request to the recipient. In other words, it is written to get the response from the recipient with the action that satisfies the enquiry. The action benefits either the sender or the recipient and sometimes both the parties.

### POINTS TO REMEMBER

- \* Letter of Enquiry should be written like a formal letter. It must include the sender's address at the beginning of the letter.
- \* It should contain the date and address of the receiver.
- \* It should have the subject of the letter precisely to give some idea of what will be discussed in the letter.
- \* It must have a salutation of greeting and the Sender's signature and name at the end of the letter.
- \* It should contain all the aspects of the enquiring item.
- \* It should be written concisely and clearly.

### FORMAT

Sender's Address

Date

Address of the Addressee

Dear Sir/Madam

Subject: Inquiry regarding .....

Body of the letter

1. Introduction to the subject
2. Elaborate on the subject /request/enquiry
3. Conclusion

Yours faithfully / Yours sincerely

Sender's name

**Sample question**

Q1. You are Anshul/Anshika, a student of class X and resident of 56 D, Ring Road, ITO, New Delhi. You want to be a choreographer. Write a letter to the director, National Institute of Choreography, Noida, seeking information about their course, admission procedure, eligibility criteria and other necessary details.

Answer:

56 D  
Ring Road, ITO  
New Delhi

30 Dec, 2021

The Director  
National Institute of Choreography  
Sector 16  
Noida

Dear Sir

Subject: Inquiry regarding a course in Choreography

With reference to your advertisement in ‘The Times of India’ dated 27 Dec ,2021, regarding the course in Choreography offered by your reputed institute, I want to state that I am currently in class X and preparing for my final exam. I am very much interested in dancing and want to take it as a career. I am also given to understand that this institute is by far the best as Choreography is concerned and I would very much like to be a part of it. Kindly send me the prospectus and the application form. I would be highly grateful if you could provide me with the following information:

- \* The department and programme faculty
- \* Funding opportunities
- \* Scholarships available
- \* Admission procedure
- \* Eligibility criteria
- \* Hostel facilities

Kindly send me the brochure along with the enrolment form at the earliest so that I could register myself for the course.

Yours faithfully

Anshul/Anshika

Q2. You are Apoorva/Ashin , Librarian of Wisdom Public School Bangalore. Write a letter to the Sales Manager of Navneeth Publishers Ltd, Bangalore enquiring about the undue delay concerning the delivery of books for your school library for which you placed an order two months ago. Also specify that you may have to cancel the order in case of further delay as the first term of the academic year has almost come to an end.

Answer

Wisdom Public School,  
Bangalore

30 Dec, 2021

The Sales Manager  
Navneet Publishers  
Bangalore

Sir

Sub: Undue delay in delivery of books.

We are sorry to show our displeasure at the undue delay in the delivery of books for our school library. We had placed a bulk order for the purchase of books for the library two months ago. However, it is unfortunate to note that even after several reminders, the books have not been supplied. Before we decide to take the next step, we would like to inquire from you about the reason for this delay. You know that the first term of the academic year has almost come to an end. If you fail to deliver the books by 15 Jan 2022, we will be compelled to cancel the order.

We hope you will not compel us to look for another supplier for the books.

Yours faithfully

Apoorva/Ashin  
Librarian

### **Unsolved questions**

1. You are David/Ronny of 305, B-block, New Ashok Nagar, Delhi. You need accommodation at a hotel in Shimla. Write a letter to the Manager of a hotel, enquiring about booking an accommodation.
2. As a health-conscious person, you noticed an advertisement in the newspaper on yoga classes in your neighbourhood. Write a letter to the organisers enquiring about the duration of the course and other relevant details. You are Swapna/Surendra of Street 60, RK Puram, New Delhi.

3. You are awaiting your class X results. Meanwhile you would like to do a short-term course in personality development. Write a letter to the Director, Personal Care, Pune, inquiring the details about the course. You are Akash/Akansha of Flat No 9, Shivaji Road, Pune.

4. You are Rema/ Rohit the school pupil leader of Valley Public School, Chennai. Your school is planning an educational tour, covering visits to a thermal power plant and a few factories during the Summer Vacation. Write a letter to The National Travel Agency, Pantheon Road, Chennai enquiring about the places, the charges, facilities and other relevant details.

5. Write a letter to the Manager, Taj International, Lucknow to find out the rates for conducting the wedding Reception of your sister, enquiring specifically about the catering cost per head, service and decoration charges and advance to be paid.

5. You are Varsha/ Varun, in charge of the Excursion Club of National Public School, Mathura Road, Agra. Write a letter to the General Manager, Northern Railways, requesting reservation of a bogie for eighty students from Agra Cantt. to Chennai and back by G.T. Express.

6. You are interested in joining a swimming club of repute in your town. Write a letter to the Secretary, College Square Swimming Club, Kolkata, enquiring about the details about membership and other terms and conditions of the club. You are Monalisa of Street 143, Palm Avenue, Kolkata.

### LETTER PLACING ORDER

<b><u>Points To Remember:</u></b>	<b><u>Essential Features:</u></b>
Clear	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Writer's address</li> </ul>
Concise	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date</li> </ul>
Polite	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Receiver's address</li> </ul>
List of things to be ordered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Subject</li> </ul>
Payment method	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Salutation</li> </ul>
Mode of shipping	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Body of the letter</li> </ul>
Give shipping address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Subscription</li> </ul>
Provide deadline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signature &amp; name</li> </ul>

## USEFUL PHRASES FOR WRITING LETTERS

### **Starting:**

1. "This is to inform you..."
2. "You are requested to send..."
3. "Kindly send us..."
4. "We are interested in..."
5. "This is with reference to (the above order)..."
6. "We are happy/pleased to place the order..."
7. "It is my pleasure to communicate to you..."
8. "We wish to remind you that..."

### **Enclosures and attachment**

1. "I should/would be pleased if you could send me..."
2. "We trust/hope you will find this condition acceptable..."
3. "Thanking you in advance..."
4. "Please find enclosed..."
5. "I am enclosing..."
6. "Please find attached..."
7. "We hope to meet your requirements..."
8. "Could you please let us know in your earliest convenience whether the above terms and conditions are acceptable for you..."
9. "We hope that the matter will be settled to our mutual satisfaction..."
10. "I would be most grateful if you would reply as soon as possible so that this matter can be resolved to everyone's satisfaction..."

### **1. Solved Question.**

You are Rohan/Ronita, Sports Secretary of Gurukul Vidyapeeth, Kochi. You are organizing Hockey and Cricket tournament in your school. For that you require some items of cricket and hockey. Place an order to M/s Bhalla Sports, Begam Bridge Road, Chennai.

Answer:

Gurukul Vidyapeeth

M.G. Road

Kochi

December 15, 2021

M/s Balla Sports

Begam Bridge Road

Chennai

Sub: Placing order for sports goods.

Sir

Finding your price list reasonable for sports goods we need in the forthcoming tournament in our school, we place our order for the following sports goods. I shall be highly obliged if you supply the items at the earliest.

Sl.No	Items	Quality/Brand	Quantity
1	Cricket Bat	BDM Superior	20
2	Hockey Sticks	SIANA Supreme	36
3	Ball (Cricket)	SS (4 piece) Super	36
4	Ball (Hockey)	SS (Rapid)	36
5	Wickets(with bails)	Reebok Standard	10 sets

Articles should be of standard quality and as per the specification. The payment will be made by cheque once the items reach us. Please send the bill in triplicate.

Yours faithfully

Sd/

Rohan/Ronita

Sports Secretary

## 2. Solved Question. (MCQ)

You are Sohan/Seema, CCAIncharge of APS Public School, Kochi. You are planning to purchase ceiling fans and pedestal fans for your school. Write a letter to the Sales Manager, M/s Machine and Machine, CB-7 Complex, T-Nagar, Chennai for placing order. Some gaps

have been left in the letter and marked as (1), (2), (3), (4), (5). Complete the letter by choosing the correct option.

CCA Incharge  
APS Public School  
Kochi

21 December 2021

.....(1).....

M/s Machine and Machine  
CB-7 Complex  
T-Nagar, Chennai

Sub:.....(2).....

Sir

As per our communication regarding purchase of ceiling fans and pedestal fans, we have approved your .....(3).....

Please supply 50 (fifty) Usha ceiling fans of 60"size and 10 Crompton pedestal fans at the earliest.

The items should be in .....(4).....and delivered within a week. 10% of the whole bill is being sent herewith .....(5)..... through a Demand Draft.

Yours faithfully  
Sd/-  
Sohan/Seema  
CCA Incharge

1. (A) The Branch Manager
- (B) The Sales Manager
- (C) The Sales Officer
- (D) The Salesman

2. (A) Placing supply order for table fans.  
(B) Placing a complaint against your supply  
(C) Placing an order for ceiling fans  
(D) Placing supply order for ceiling fans and pedestal fans
  
3. (A) quotation and conditions of payment.  
(B) request for order  
(C) request for payment  
(D) quotation for maintenance
  
4. (A) any condition and properly pack  
(B) good condition, securely packed  
(C) good condition and parceled  
(D) properly dispatched
  
5. (A) as total payment  
(B) as partial payment  
(C) as advance  
(D) none of these

#### ANSWERS

1. (B) The Sales Manager
2. (D) Placing supply order for ceiling fans and pedestal fans
3. (A) quotation and conditions of payment
4. (B) good condition, securely packed
5. (C) as advance

### **3. Solved Question**

You are Vishal/ Anitha, Hostel Warden, KET Public School, Amaravathi, Utter Pradesh.

Write a letter to the sales Manager, Bharath Electronics and Domestic Appliances Ltd., New Delhi, placing an order for a few fans, microwave ovens and geysers that you wish to purchase for the hostel. Also ask for the discount permissible on the purchase.

Answer:

KET Public School  
Nehru Road ,Amaravathi  
Utter Pradesh  
Pin: xxxxxx

22 February, 2022

The Sales Manager  
Bharath Electronics and domestic Appliances Ltd.  
Lalbhag  
New Delhi  
Pin. Xxxxxx

Sir  
Subject: Order for domestic appliances

We are pleased to place an order for the following items. Kindly send these at the above mentioned address carefully as per the prices already negotiated.

Name of the Items	Number of Items	Brand
Fans 48''	50	Bajaj
Microwave Oven	25	LG
Bulb 60 W	100	Philips
Tubelight 40 W	100	Nova
Table Fans	10	Bajaj

Kindly ensure that all the items are in good condition and packed properly. The items must be delivered within 15 days of the issue of this letter. Any damage during transportation will be borne by you. Further kindly note that the transportation charges will be paid by you.

Yours faithfully  
Anitha

(Hostel Warden)

### **UNSOLVED PRACTICE QUESTIONS**

Q1. You are Priyanka, Librarian of your school, Thiruvananthapuram. You have been asked to place an order for some books for the school library. Write a letter to the Sales Manager, Penta Books, Main Road, Cochin, placing an order for the books that you need.

Q2. You are Rajwir, Head of the Chemistry Department of MET Senior Secondary School, Mangalore. You require various lab apparatuses and chemicals for your school laboratory. Write a letter to the Sales Manager of OH Scientific Works, Mangalore, placing a bulk order for the purchase of various items. Mention of necessary details of the items as well as the discounts available on the purchase.

Q3. You are Kalpak S, General Manager, KS Enterprises, Delhi. You need various items of furniture and stationery for your newly constructed head office. Write a letter to Global Official Works, Noida, Delhi, placing a bulk order for the supply giving all details of the items ordered.

Q4. As office manager, Little Flower Public School, Mumbai, place on order for stationery including A4 size paper, Deskjet ink cartridge, refills (red and blue), chart paper and boxes of chalk. Write a letter to Vidhya Books and Stationaries, Sector 5, North Street, Mumbai, giving the details in not more than 150 words regarding the mode of dispatch and the mode of payment in not more than 150 words.

Q5. You are Mahender/Malavika, Principal, Global International School, Pune. Your school has just started a music department. Write a letter to the Manager of Symphony Store, MG Road, Pune, wholesale suppliers of musical instruments, placing an order for musical instruments for your school.

### **ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH WRITING**

An analytical paragraph is a form of descriptive writing which is written on the basis of a given chart, graph, data, outline, clues, table etc. It requires analysis and comparison of the given facts and drawing conclusion based on the given data.

### **Features of an Analytical Paragraph:**

- It describes the given chart, table, data, graph, cues etc.
- It should be brief and comprehensive but at the same time, include complete information.
- It should state the facts that are provided.
- It should have simple and accurate language.
- It should mention figures and quantities appropriately.
- It should use the same tense throughout, as far as possible.
- It should not provide any personal observation or response.

## **TYPES OF ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPHS**

### **1. PROBLEM AND SOLUTION BASED**

A problem is presented and learners are expected to suggest some solution based on some logic. They are supposed to support their solution with arguments, reasons and/or data.

### **2. DATA BASED**

Some data is presented in the form of a pie chart, a bar graph, line graph, a table or a combination of any of these and learners are expected to analyse the data making comparisons and drawing conclusions.

### **3. INFORMATION BASED**

Some information is presented as an input and students are required to process and understand that information and then summarise it in a paragraph. Sometimes, they may also be required to give their own opinions or draw their own conclusions, too.

#### **4. PROCESS DESCRIPTION BASED**

A flow chart, a diagram, a visual or an info graphic is presented and students have to analyse information it presents, usually a process showing the sequence or different stages of action in the making of something.

#### **5. MAP BASED**

Usually a set of two maps is presented as an input with significant differences in a piece of land, a landscape or a building plan showing some changes, additions, and alterations therein. Students are supposed to carefully analyse these changes and summarise them in the form of a paragraph.

#### **Format of an Analytical Paragraph**

##### **Content in 100-120 words**

##### **The content of the paragraph must include the following:**

- \* Introduction (explain in one or two lines the context or what is clearly evident from the chart or graph)
- \* Body of the paragraph (explain in detail the figure and trends, making comparisons and contrasts)
- \* Use of appropriate functional language required to show trend progression and comparison (more/less/ increase/ decrease/ stable etc.) to achieve cohesion
- \* Identification of main trends : at least 4 clearly identified trends. Note – focusing and extending one particular trend would be considered as one trend only
- \* Conclusion (give the overall view or summary of the chart or graph)

#### **Useful Expressions for Writing an Analytical Paragraph**

**For introduction**, we can start with phrases such as-

The chart given above describes.../The given table suggests.../ The line graph shows.../ The data given provides information about.../ The pie chart illustrates..., etc.

### **To report an increase**

- Has risen/increased/gone up/shot up...
- Has experienced/seen a rise/an increase in...
- Has shown/registered a rise/an increase...
- Has reached a maximum/peak of...

### **To report a decrease**

- Has fallen/gone down/come down to...
- Has dropped from..... to .....
- Has experienced/registered/shown a fall/a decrease/a decline in....
- Has hit/touched/reached its lowest/minimum level/point...

### **To report differences**

- Is better than/more than double/half as much/three times more/less than....
- Not as big as/as much as/as large as...
- Many times over/more/less...

### **To report similarity**

- Is the same as/similar to...
- Is/are comparable with...
- Can be grouped together/classified together/clubbed with...
- Show(s) similarity/similarities... - There are striking similarities between...

### **To report comparisons and contrast**

- As compared to...
- In (sharp) contrast to/with...
- Is comparable/not comparable with...
- Compares well with..... /Contrasts with...

### **To report constancy or no change**

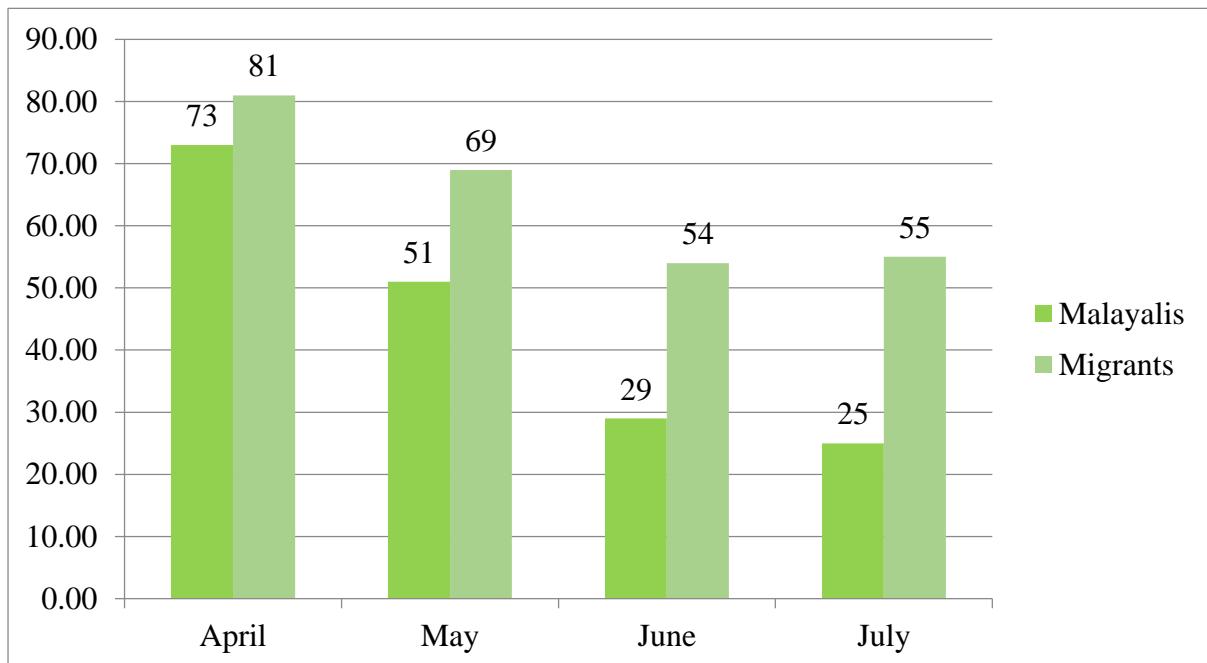
- Has seen/registered/experienced/shown no change...
- Has remained constant/unchanged/the same...

### For Conclusion

- overall....', 'subsequently...', 'in all....', 'in a nutshell', 'in short', 'therefore', etc.

### Solved Examples

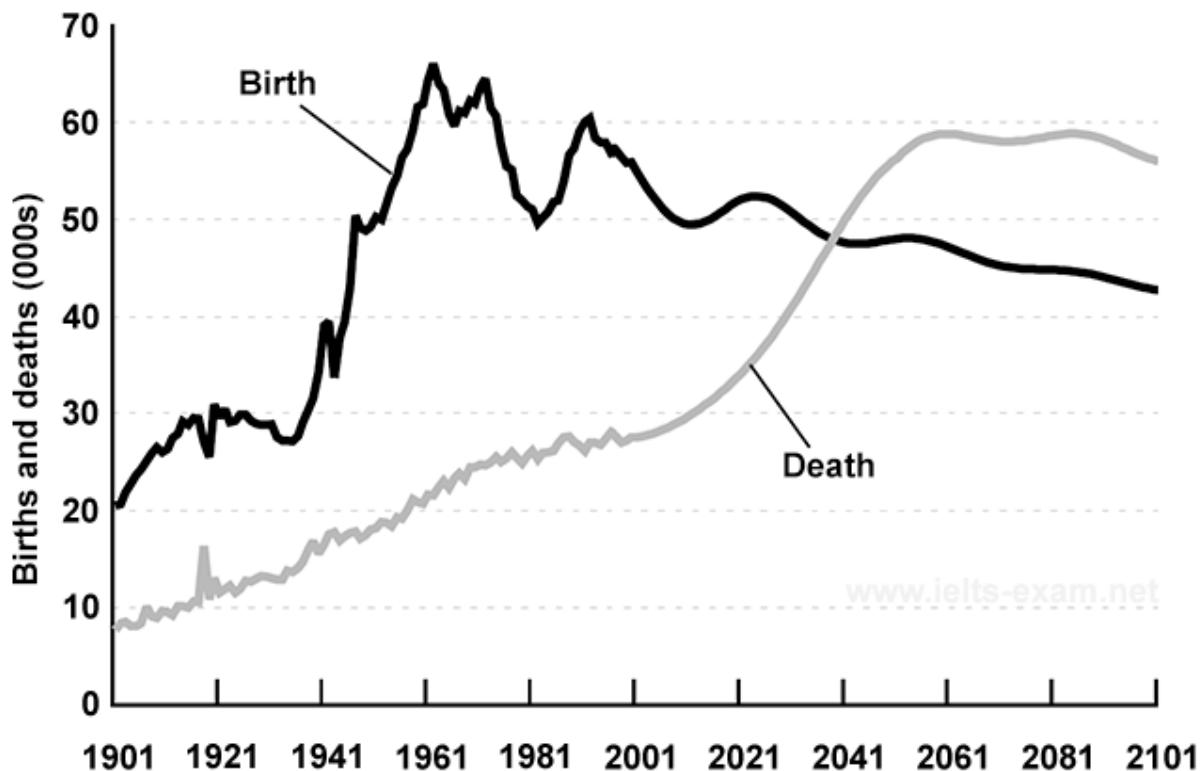
1 Given below is a chart showing the impact of Covid 19 on the jobs of a group of people in the Non- Corporate sector of Kerala during the initial months of the outbreak of Covid 19. Write an analytical paragraph in about 100 to 120 words.



Covid 19 has paved way for large scale job loss in the Non-Corporate sector of Kerala. While April was the most affected month as far as both Malayalis and Migrants were concerned, the months of May, June and July saw a gradual decline. In the month of April, 73 percent of Malayalis became jobless, while the Migrants recorded 81 percent. Around 20 percent and 10 percent reduction in job loss can be seen in the month of May among Malayalis and Migrants respectively, recording 51 percent among Malayalis and 69 percent among Migrants. The trend continued in the next two months in the sense that there was a decline in the numbers as far as Malayalis were concerned and only a very gradual decline as far as the Migrants were concerned. From the 51 percent reflected in May, the Malayalis incurred a job loss of 29 percent in June whereas the Migrants incurred a loss of 54 percent as compared to 69 in the month of

May. In July The Malayalis were seen to have incurred a loss of 25 percent compared to the Migrants who incurred an increased loss of 55 percent. Though both the groups were affected, the Migrants can be said to be the worst-hit by the pandemic.

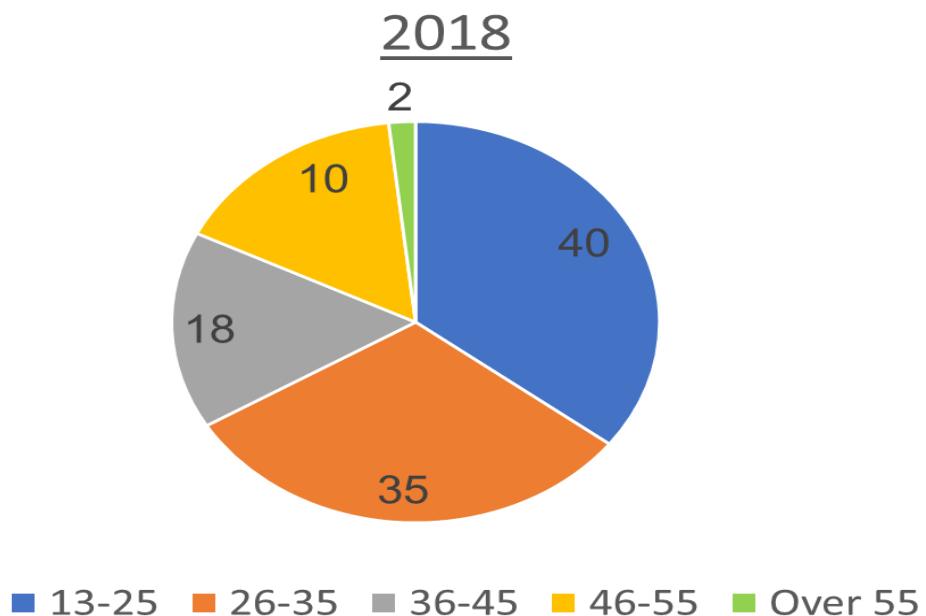
2. Below is a graph given showing birth and death rates in a country from 1901 to 2101. Write an analytical paragraph in about 100 to 120 words.



The graph shows birth and death rates starting from 1901 till 2101. Since 1901, the birth rate has remained more than the death rate until 2041. Birth rate was 20000 in 1901 and started increasing gradually. It peaked in 1961 to around 65000. From 1961, birth rate has fluctuated multiple times between 50000 and 60000. It is expected to decline for the coming years reaching approximately 42000 by 2101. On the other hand, the death rate stood at around 10000 in 1901 and then has increased steadily. It is expected to rise strikingly from 2021 before leveling off to approximately 60000 between 2061 and 2081. The graph indicates a slight decline in deaths in the year 2101. The graph shows the huge gap between birth rate and death during 1961 to 2001. However, this gap is expected to reduce in the later years. Overall, as opposed to the prevailing trends, the death rate will be more than the birth rate in the later half of the 21st century.

3. The chart below gives the percentage of social media users by age in Jamestown in 2018. Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features. Write at least 120 words.

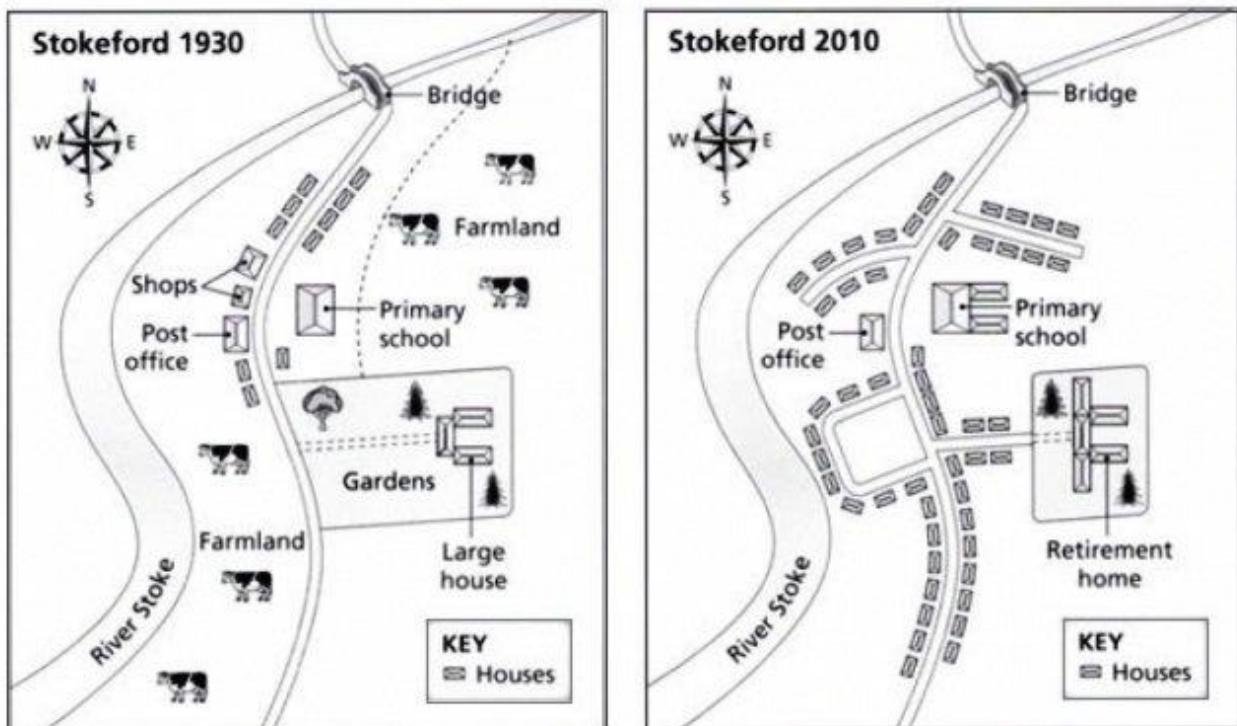
### Social Media Users in Jamestown



The given pie chart provides information about the proportion of people using digital networking according to the age group for Jamestown in the year 2018. In terms of the most significant feature of the chart, the largest category of digital communicators was the group aged 13 to 25, which accounted for 40% of the total users. In addition, the next important segment of the population using social media, was those aged between 26 and 35. This group's contribution was slightly lower at 35%. Moreover, added together, these two categories made up more than half of all those who used social media platforms in 2018, in Jamestown. They accounted for the vast majority of users, at 75%.

4. The maps below show the village of Stokeford in 1930 and 2010.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant in about 100 to 120 words.

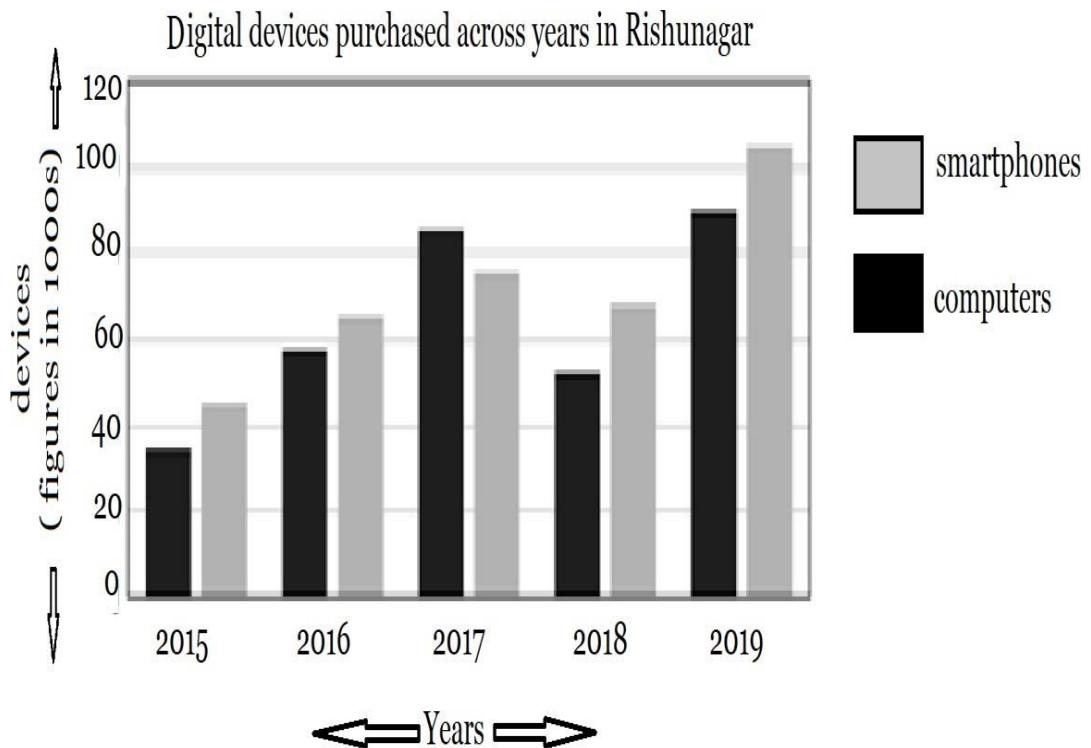


The maps below show the village of Stokeford in 1930 and 2010.

The two maps illustrate how the village of Stokeford, situated on the east bank of the River Stoke, changed over an 80 year period from 1930 to 2010. There was considerable development of the settlement over these years and it was gradually transformed from a small rural village into a largely residential area. The most notable change is the presence of housing in 2010 on the areas that were farmland back in 1930. New roads were constructed on this land and many residential properties built. In response to the considerable increase in population, the primary school was extended to around double the size of the previous building. While the post office remained as a village amenity, the two shops that can be seen to the north-west of the school in 1930, no longer existed by 2010, having been replaced by houses. There also used to be an extensive property standing in its own large gardens situated to the south-east of the school. At some time between 1930 and 2010, this was extended and converted into a retirement home. This was another significant transformation for the village.

**Unsolved**

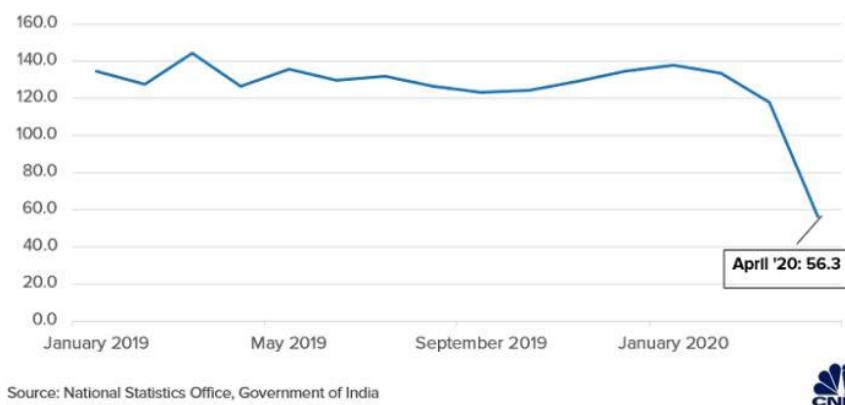
1 The chart below displays data about the number of digital devices purchased in Rishunagar across the years 2015-2019. Write a paragraph analyzing the given data in about 100–120 words.



2. India's industrial production in sectors such as mining, manufacturing of consumer durables, electricity dropped sharply in April 2020 when the country went into lock down and most factories were not in operation. The chart below paints a snap shot of how economic activities were hampered during the lock down. Write a paragraph analyzing the given data in about 100–120 words.

### Index of Industrial Production

Data showed a sharp contraction in industrial output in April as most of the industrial sector remained shut due to the national lockdown

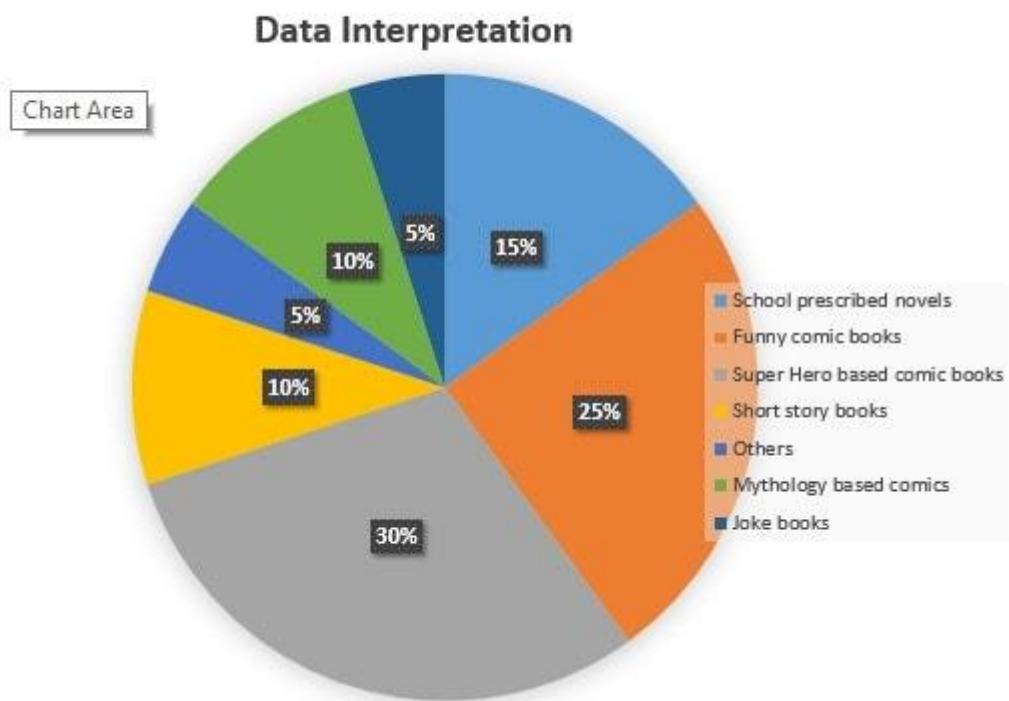


3Read the following excerpt from an article that appeared in the magazine section of a local daily:

*Increasingly popular in recent years, growbags are an invaluable source to those gardeners in small or less than optimal spaces. Growbags offer gardeners a quick and easy way to establish lush, healthy landscapes. The fabric grow bags are by nature soft but should we necessarily go 'soft' on the valid concerns and questions they raise?*

Write a paragraph in about 100–120 words to analyse the given argument. You could think about alternative explanations and include rationale / evidence that would strengthen / counter the given argument.

4.The following pie-chart shows the kinds of book categories preferred by students of age group 7-12 years. Write your interpretation of the data in an analytical paragraph in about 100 to 120 words



\*\*\*\*\*

## GRAMMAR SECTION

### Tenses

#### Present Tense

Present Tense can be defined as an expression for an activity that is currently in action or is habitually performed. It is used for a state that generally exists or is currently ongoing.

- Simple Present Tense

Singular	Plural
<b>Rule: Subject + V1 + s/es + Object</b>	<b>Rule: Subject + V1 + Object</b>
<b>Example: She sings a song.</b> Here the subject is ‘she’ (singular) and “s” has been added to the verb (sing), followed by the object (song)	<b>Example: The girls sing a song.</b> Here the subject is Girls (plural) and no changes have been made with V1 (first form of verb) and the object

- Present Continuous

<b>Rule: Subject + is/am/are + V1 + ing + object</b>
--

Example: She is eating chocolate.

Here the subject is She, followed by “is”.

The first form of the verb (V1) here is “eat” and “ing” has been added to it, followed by the object “food”

- Present Perfect

Singular	Plural
<b>Rule: Subject + has + V3 + Object</b>	<b>Rule: Subject + have + V3 + Object</b>
<b>Example: He has cleaned the utensils.</b> Here, “He” is the subject + has “Cleaned” is the third form of the verb and utensils is the object	<b>Example: They have cleaned the utensils.</b> Here, “They” is the subject + have “Cleaned” is the third form of the verb and utensils is the object

- Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Singular	Plural
<b>Rule: Subject + has been + V1 + ing + Object</b>	<b>Rule: Subject + have been + V1 + ing + Object</b>
<b>Example: She has been practicing dance since morning.</b> Here “She” is the subject + has been, followed by “ing” added to the first form of the verb “practice” and then the object	<b>Example: They have been practicing dance since morning.</b> Here “They” is the subject + have been, followed by “ing” added to the first form of the verb “practice” and then the object

## Past Tense

Any event or action that took place in the past can be referred to as the past tense. Below we have discussed in detail the four subparts of past tense in English grammar.

- Simple Past

<b>Rule: Subject + V2 + Object</b>
------------------------------------

<b>For example: He ran away</b>
---------------------------------

Here, the subject is “He” and “ran” is the second form of the verb (V2) of “run” followed by the object
---

- Past Continuous

Singular	Plural
<b>Rule: Subject + was + V1 + ing + Object</b>	<b>Rule: Subject + were + V1 + ing + Object</b>
<b>For example: She was going to school.</b> Here, the subject is “She” + was followed by the first form of the verb (V1) “go” + “ing” and then the object “school”	<b>For example: They were going to school.</b> Here, the subject is “They” + were followed by the first form of the verb (V1) “go” + “ing” and then the object “school”

- Past Perfect

<b>Rule: Subject + had + V3 + Object</b>
--

<b>For example: Sumit had left the job.</b>
---

Here the subject is “Sumit” + had
-----------------------------------

Then “left”, which is the third form of the verb (V3) “leave” is given followed by the object
---

- Past Perfect Continuous

<b>Rule: Subject + had been + V1 + ing + Object</b>
---

<b>For example: They had been preparing for their examination for two months</b>
--

Here the subject is “They” + had been
---------------------------------------

It is followed by “preparing”, which is the first form of the verb (V1) of “prepare” and then the object

## Future Tense

The actions that are to take place in the future fall in the category of the future tense. We have discussed the subparts of the future tense in detail further below in the article, followed by the examples for the same.

- **Simple Future**

**Rule: Subject + will/shall + V1 + Object**

**For Example: I will visit my uncle tomorrow.**

Here, the subject is “I” + will

It is followed by the first form of verb (V1) “visit” and then the object

- Future Continuous

**Rule: Subject + will be/shall be + V1 + ing + Object**

**For Example: I shall be going to the office tomorrow.**

In this example, the subject is “I” + shall be

Following it is the first form of verb (V1) “go” +ing and then the object

- Future Perfect

**Rule: Subject + will have/shall have + V3 + Object**

**For Example: I shall have prepared the notes by tomorrow morning.**

In this example, the subject is “I” + shall have

It is followed by “prepared”, which is the third form of Verb (V3) “prepare” and then the object

- Future Perfect Continuous

**Rule: Subject + will have been + V1 + ing + Object**

**For Example: Rahul will have been working here since 2020.**

Here, the subject is “Rahul” + will have been

It is followed by the first form of verb “work” +ing and then the object

**Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs.**

1. The police ..... four thieves last night.
  - a. catches.
  - b. catch
  - c. caught
  - d. catching
  
2. My mother was ..... food when he came in.
  - a. cooked
  - b. cook
  - c. cooks
  - d. cooking
  
3. Rohan ..... the movie before he read the review.
  - a. Watched
  - b. had watched
  - c. watch
  - d. watches
  
4. Stars ..... in the sky at night.
  - a. twinkle
  - b. twinkles
  - c. twinkling
  - d. is twinkling
  
5. All the students ..... the class work when the teacher came in.
  - a. Do
  - b. are doing
  - c. does
  - d. were doing

6. Mahesh..... tomorrow from Patna.

- a. come
- b. comes
- c. will come
- d. came

7. The patient..... before the doctor came.

- a. die
- b. had died
- c. dead
- d. has dead

8. I saw that the policemen..... the thieves.

- a. chases
- b. is chasing
- c. were chasing
- d. had chased

9. The whole family \_\_\_\_\_ for the ceremony.

- a. has been invited
- b. have been invited
- c. invites
- d. Invited

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ this book since morning.

- a .have been reading
- b. has been reading
- c.have had read
- d. shall be reading

## **SUBJECT – VERB CONCORD**

Subject-Verb agreement means that the number and person of the subject must agree with the verb in any given sentence. This agreement of the subject and the verb is called Concord. There are certain rules for this agreement.

A verb must agree with its Number and Person.

In other words, the Verb of a sentence agrees with the Number and Person of the Subject of that sentence.

Note: When we use an **uncountable noun** as the subject of a verb, we use a singular form of the verb:

**Choose the right form of verb from the given options:**

- 1) A pair of scissors was/were taken out of the drawer.
- 2) Measles is/are an infectious disease.
- 3) A number of videos have/ has been deleted from the phone.
- 4) None of these flowers grow/ grows well inside the house.
- 5) Neither of these printers work/ works properly.
- 6) Each of the employees is/ are going to get a trip as a gift.
- 7) Bread and eggs is/ are my favourite.
- 8) One of the students were/was talking.
- 9) The cricket team is/are headed to the nationals since winning the state finals
- 10) Nine and nine make/ makes eighteen.

## **MODALS**

Modals are special verbs that are different from normal verbs.

1. Modals always express additional information about the principal verb. They used to express ability, power, permission, request, possibility, willingness, certainty, right and wrong, necessity, etc.
2. Modals do not come alone; they always take the 1st form of the verb with them.
3. Modals are never affected by the person, number and gender of the subject

**Modals**

Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct option to fill the blank with appropriate modals.

1. When he was young, he ..... swim very well. He won medals and championships!

Modal	What it Expresses
Shall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Simple future (When used with 1<sup>st</sup> person i.e., I/we)</li> <li>Threat, Promise, determination, command when used with 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> person (you, he, she, it, they)</li> </ul>
Will	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Simple future when used with 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> person</li> <li>Threat, Promise, determination, command when used with 1<sup>st</sup> person</li> </ul>
Should	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Duty, Obligation, advice, suggestion, request, surprise, purpose, etc.</li> <li>Past form of 'shall'</li> </ul>
Would	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past form of 'will'</li> <li>Willingness, past habit, determination, suggestion, polite request, wish or desire, unreal condition</li> </ul>
Can	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ability, a strong possibility, permission</li> </ul>
Need	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Principal as well as a defective verb. As a defective verb used in weakness, necessity, obligation (Negative and Interrogative sentences)</li> </ul>
Could	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past form of can, Ability of past, polite request, possibility, etc.</li> </ul>
May	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Formal permission, doubtful possibility, purpose, wish</li> </ul>
Might	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past form of 'May'</li> <li>Possibility, purpose</li> </ul>
Must	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Necessity, compulsion, obligation, determination, certainty, emphatic advice, prohibition, etc.</li> </ul>
Ought to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Moral duty, obligation, advice, strong probability</li> </ul>
Used to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Past habit</li> </ul>
Has to Have to /Had to	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forced action of future or past</li> </ul>

(a) may

(b) can

(c) could

(d) shall

Ans. (c) The given sentence talks about ability and is in the past tense, so ‘could’ is the correct word to fill the blank.

2. The factory ..... go bankrupt if they don’t find a lot of money quickly!

(a) should

(b) shouldn’t

(c) need

(d) might

Ans. (d) The given sentence talks about the possibility, so ‘might’ is the correct word to fill the blank.

3. It’s humid and windy outside today. You ..... go out without an umbrella.

(a) shouldn’t

(b) won’t

(c) ought to

(d) must

Ans. (a) The given sentence talks about advice, so ‘shouldn’t’ is the appropriate word here.

4. If you had let me know earlier, I ..... have been able to come.

(a) will

(b) shall

(c) would

(d) must

Ans. (c) It is a conditional clause; the main clause is in the past tense, so ‘would’ should be used here.

5. ..... anybody attend the seminar or is it just for registered participants?

(a) Will

(b) Can

(c) Must

(d) Should

Ans. (b) The given sentence talks about ability and is in the present tense, so 'can' is the correct word to fill the blank.

6. You ..... have bothered coming. I've done it already.

(a) wouldn't

(b) mightn't

(c) needn't

(d) won't

Ans. (c) The given sentence talks about necessity, so 'needn't' is the correct word to fill the given blank.

7. If there is an age restriction then you ..... go in as you are too young.

(a) should

(b) shouldn't

(c) shall not

(d) will not

Ans. (b)

8. The government ..... vote on the issue tomorrow. It's scheduled for 10am.

(a) will

(b) may

(c) would

(d) could

Ans. (a) The given sentence is in the future tense, so 'will' is used here.

9. You ..... have worked so hard last week. You look so tired now.

(a) must not

(b) ought not

(c) can't

(d) won't

Ans. (b) The phrase 'ought to' is used for the advise, so 'ought not' is the appropriate word here.

10. He is not really sure where the dog is, but he thinks he ..... be playing in the garden.

(a) can

(b) may

(c) will

(d) had

Ans. (b) The given sentence talks about possibility, so 'may' is the correct word to fill the blank

---

### Modal Exercises

Fill in the blanks with correct modals.

1) Peter knew that he \_\_\_\_\_ (Would/ must) be able to reach the railway station in time.

2) You \_\_\_\_\_ (dare/ could) not enter my cabin again.

3) I thought they \_\_\_\_\_ (should/ would) be at home.

4) Tansen \_\_\_\_\_ (can/ should) sing in two voices.

5) I \_\_\_\_\_ (can't/ couldn't) write what you spoke.

6) You \_\_\_\_\_ (should/ can) have told me earlier.

7) \_\_\_\_\_ (Can/ Should) I get something to drink, please? I am very thirsty.

8) She \_\_\_\_\_ (would/ should) love to teach these children.

9) You \_\_\_\_\_ (must/ will) see the lawyer at once.

10) \_\_\_\_\_ (May/ Might) god protect you from the pain and agony.

### Answers:

#### Tenses

1. caught

2. cooking

3. had watched
4. twinkle
5. were doing
6. will come
7. had died
8. were chasing
9. has been invited
10. have been reading

### **Subject-verb Concord**

- 1) was
- 2) is
- 3) Have
- 4) Grows
- 5) Work
- 6) Is
- 7) is
- 8) was
- 9) is
- 10) Makes

### **Modals**

- 1) Would
- 2) Dare
- 3) Would
- 4) Can

- 5) Couldn't
- 6) Should
- 7) Can
- 8) Would
- 9) Must
- 10) May

## DETERMINERS

Determiners are words that introduce nouns. These are the different types:

**Articles:** a, an, the

**Demonstratives:** this, that, these, those

**Possessive Adjectives:** my, your, her, his, our, its, their

**Quantifiers:** a little, a few, many, much, a lot of, most, any, some, enough

**Numbers:** one, five, forty

**Distributives:** both, all, half, neither, either, every, each

**Interrogatives:** what, which, whose

### Articles

Articles can be definite articles (the) or indefinite (a or an). 'The' is used when the speaker thinks that the listener already knows what is being referred to. Otherwise 'a'(before consonants) or an (before vowels) is used. Exceptions are there

Ex: She took a significant amount of time to learn English

I bought a nice present for my uncle

### Demonstratives

Demonstrative determiners are used to identify or point to a particular person, event, or object. This and that are singular. These and those are plural.

I like this kind of biscuit

Why don't you buy that book instead of this one?

### Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjective determiners function as adjectives rather than pronouns. As they are adjectives, they appear before the noun that they are modifying.

Ex: Do you like my new dress?

I prefer my uniform to yours (i.e. your uniform)

### **Quantifiers**

Quantifiers provide approximate or specific answers to the questions "How many?" and "How much?"

Ex: I only take a little bit of milk with my tea

Quite a few people should be coming to the party

### **Numbers**

Numbers are either cardinal (one, two, three, etc.), which are adjectives referring to quantity, or ordinal (first, second, third, etc.) referring to distribution.

Ex:Two cars are enough for most families

There are about twenty-five people in my office

### **Distributives**

Distributive determiners are used to refer to a group or individual members of the group.

They reveal more about how people or things are distributed, shared, or divided.

Ex: Both countries need to discuss the issues and find a solution

All pet dogs need plenty of attention

### **Interrogatives**

Interrogatives are used to ask questions. '**Which**' as a determiner is used to ask about a specific group of people or things.

'**What**' as a determiner is used when we are asking a general question. '**Whose**' is used to ask a question about possession.

Ex:Which restaurant did you like best?

What time will you come?

### **DETERMINERS (MCQS)**

1. .... people participated in the program.

A. Several

B. Much

C. The few

D. Little

2. We need ..... chairs for the guests.

A. little

B. either

C. more

D. some

3. ..... girl who answered the phone was a Punjabi.

A. A

B. The

C. That

D. This

4. ..... people came forward to help him.

A. Many

B. Nobody

C. Everybody

D. Somebody

5. I wish I had ..... Money.

A. less

B. little

C. a little

D. more

6. She told me that ..... yellow was her favourite colour.

A. a

B. the

C. this

D. No article is required

7. You can take ..... of these two bags.

A. many

B. more

C. either

D. some

8. ..... the guests have arrived.

A. All

B. Much

C. Enough

D. Some

9. We haven't got ..... money.

A. some

B. many

C. more

D. much

10. We looked for him ..... but we couldn't find him  
.....

A. somewhere, anywhere

B. anywhere, somewhere

C. everywhere, anywhere

D. nowhere, somewhere

Answers

1. **Several** people participated in the program.
2. We need **more** chairs for the guests.
3. **The / That** girl who answered the phone was a Punjabi.
4. **Many** people came forward to help him.
5. I wish I had **more** money.
6. She told me that yellow was her favourite colour. (No article is required before yellow.)
7. You can take **either** of these two bags.
8. **All** the guests have arrived.
9. We haven't got **much** money.
10. We looked for him **everywhere**, but we couldn't find him **anywhere**.

## REPORTED SPEECH

### (Statements, Commands, Requests, and Questions)

The words spoken by a person can be reported in two ways—Direct and Indirect. When we quote the exact words spoken by a person, we call it Direct Speech.

Sohan said to Mohan, “I am going to school.”

The exact words spoken by Sohan are put within inverted commas. But when we give the substance of what Sohan said, it is called Indirect Speech.

Direct and Indirect Speech

Sohan told to Mohan that he (Sohan) was going to school.

### 1. Rules for Changing Direct Speech into Indirect Speech:

- In the Indirect speech, inverted commas are not used.
- The conjunctions **that, if, whether**, are generally used after the reporting verb.
- The first word of the reported speech begins with a capital letter.
- The tense of the reporting verb is never changed.
- The reporting verb changes according to sense – it may be told, asked, inquired.

## 2. Rules for the Change of Pronouns:

- The first person pronouns (I, me, my, we, us, our) in the reported speech change according to the subject of the reporting verb.
- The pronouns of the second person (you, your, yourself) in the reported speech change according to the object of the reporting verb.
- The pronouns of the third person do not change.

### For example:

- He said, “I like the book.”

He said that he liked the book.

## 3. Changes in words expressing nearness, time, auxiliaries, etc.

**This** changes into **That**

**These** changes into **Those**

**Now** changes into **Then**

**Here** changes into **There**

**Today** changes into **That day**

**Tomorrow** changes into **the next day**

**Yesterday** changes into **the previous day**

**Last night** changes into **the previous night**

**Can** changes into **Could**

**May** changes into **Might**

**Shall** changes into **Should**

**Will** changes into **Would**

**Ago** changes into **Before**

**Just** changes into **Then**

**Come** changes into **Go**

**Thus** changes into **So**

#### 4. Change in Tenses:

- If the reporting verb is in the present or the future tense, the tense of the reported speech is not changed:

Satish says, "I am flying a kite."

Satish says that he is flying a kite

If the reporting verb is in the past tense, then the tense of the reported speech will change as follows:

##### *Direct*

##### **Simple Present**

*write*

##### **Present Progressive**

*am/is/are writing*

##### **Present Perfect**

*has written*

##### **Simple Past**

*wrote*

##### **Past Progressive**

*was/were writing*

changes into

##### *Indirect*

##### **Simple Past**

*wrote*

##### **Past Progressive**

*was/were writing*

##### **Past Perfect**

*had written*

##### **Past Perfect**

*had written*

##### **Past Perfect Progressive**

*had been writing.*

#### 5. If the direct speech expresses a historical fact, universal truth, or a habitual fact, then the tense of the direct speech will not change:

Direct: He said, "Honesty is the best policy."

Indirect: He said that honesty is the best policy.

#### 6. Changing Statements into Indirect Speech:

- The reporting verb 'said to' is changed-to 'told', 'replied', 'remarked',
- When reporting verb is not followed by an object, it is not changed.
- The inverted commas are removed. The conjunction is used to connect the reporting clause with the reported speech.

#### 7. The rules for the change of pronouns, tenses, etc. are followed.

Person	Subjective Case		Objective Case		Possessive Case	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Ist	I	we	me	us	my	our
2nd	You	you	you	you	your	your
3rd	He/She/It	they	him/her/it	them	his/her/its	their

Ex. Direct: Ramu said, “I saw a lion in the forest.”

Indirect: Ramu said that he had seen a lion in the forest.

### **8. Rules for the Change of Interrogative (Questions) sentences:**

The reporting verb “say” is changed into ask, inquire,

The interrogative sentence is changed into a statement by placing the subject before the verb and the full stop is put at the end of the sentence.

If the interrogative sentence has a wh-word (who, when, where, how, why, etc) the wh-word is repeated in the sentence. It serves as conjunction.

If the interrogative sentence is a yes-no answer type sentence (with auxiliary verbs am, are, was, were, do, did, have, shall, etc), then ‘if’ or ‘whether’ is used as a conjunction.

The auxiliaries do, does, did in a positive question in the reported speech are dropped.

The conjunction is not used after the reporting clause.

- Direct: I said to him, “Where are you going?”

Indirect: I asked him where he was going.

### **9. Changing Commands and Requests into Indirect Speech:**

- In imperative sentences having commands, the reporting verb is changed into command, order, tell, allow, request, etc.
- The imperative mood is changed into the infinitive mood by putting ‘to’, before the verb. In case of negative sentences, the auxiliary ‘do’ is dropped and ‘to’ is placed after ‘not’:
- Direct: She said to me, “Open the window.”

Indirect: She ordered me to open the window.

### **10. Sentences with ‘Let’.**

- ‘Let’ is used in various meanings.
- (i) ‘Let’ is used to make a proposal.
- First change the reporting verb into ‘proposed’ or ‘suggested’.
- Use ‘should’ instead of ‘let’.

Example:

Direct: He said to me, “Let us go home.”

Indirect: He suggested to me that we should go home.

- (ii) ‘Let’ is used as ‘to allow’.
- In Indirect Speech, we change the reporting verb to ‘requested’ or ‘ordered’.
- We start Reported Speech with ‘to’.

Direct: Ram said to Mohan, "Let him do it."

Indirect: Ram ordered Mohan to let him do that.

Or

Ram told Mohan that he might be allowed to do that.

### **11. Sentences with Question Tags**

- (i) In the indirect speech the question-tag is usually left.
- (ii) In indirect speech these words are removed and the word 'respectfully' is used in the reporting clause.

Ex. Direct: Mahesh said, "Sir, may I go home?"

Indirect: Mahesh respectfully asked his sir if he might go home.

### **12. Sentences with 'have to' or 'had to'**

- (i) Change 'have to' according to the rules.
- (ii) But change 'had to' into 'had had to' in the indirect speech.

Ex.

Direct :Hari said, "I have to work a lot."

Indirect: Hari said that he had to work a lot.

### **13. Exclamations and Wishes**

Sometimes Exclamatory sentences contain exclamations like Hurrah!, Alas!, Oh!, Heavens!, Bravo, etc. Such exclamatory words are removed in the indirect speech and we use 'exclaimed with sorrow', exclaimed with joy, exclaimed with surprise, etc. instead of 'said'.

Ex. Direct : Rohan said, "Hurrah! We won the match."

Indirect: Rohan exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.

### **EXERCISE**

1. Read the following sentences and choose the correct option to transform into Reported Speech:-

1. Sonia said, "You help my sister".
  - a. Sonia said that I helps her sister.
  - b. Sonia said to me that I helped her sister.
  - c. Sonia said that I helped her sister.

d. Sonia says that I helped her sister.

2. They said, "We cannot live without oxygen'

- a. They said that we cannot live without oxygen
- b. They said that they cannot live without oxygen.
- c. They said that they would not live without oxygen.
- d. They says that they cannot live without oxygen

3. John says, "I will go there".

- a. John said that he went there.
- b. John says that he will go there.
- c. John says that he went there.
- d. John said that I will go there.

4. He said. "Honesty is the best policy."

- a. He said that Honesty is the best policy.
- b. He said that Honesty was the best policy
- c. He said that Honesty would be the best policy.
- d. He said that Honesty will be the best policy.

5. Deepak said to me, "I had finished the coffee."

- a. Deepak told me that he had finished the coffee.
- b. Deepak told me that he had been finished the coffee.
- c. Deepak told me that he had finish the coffee.
- d. Deepak told me that he finished the coffee.

6. He said to us, "Are you going to market today?"

- a. He asked us if we were going to market that day.
- b. He asked us if you are going to market that day.
- c. He asked us if we went to market that day.
- d. He asked us if we had gone to market that day

7. He said to me, "You are rich, aren't you ?"

- a. He asked me if I had rich.

- b. He asked me if I had been rich.
- c. He asked me if I was rich.
- d. He asked me if I was rich, wasn't me.

8. He said to me, "Do read the newspaper daily."

- a. He asked to me to read the newspaper daily.
- b. He asked me to do read the newspaper daily.
- c. He asked me to read the newspaper daily.
- d. He requested me to read the newspaper daily.

9. Sahil said to his friends, "Let's go to the park."

- a. Sahil suggested to his friends that they should go to the park.
- b. Sahil requested to his friends that we should go to the park.
- c. Sahil suggested to his friends that we would go to the park.
- d. Sahil suggested to his friends that we have to go to the park.

10. She said, "Madam, I have done homework."

- a. She said respectfully that she had been done homework.
- b. She said respectfully that she has done homework.
- c. She said respectfully that she had done homework.
- d. She said respectfully to her teacher that she had done homework.

11. Captain said, "Bravo ! We have won the match."

- a. Captain exclaimed with joy that they have won the match.
- b. Captain exclaimed that they had won the match.
- c. Captain exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
- d. Captain exclaimed with surprise that they had won the match.

12. Shakshi said, "How clever I am!"

- a. Shakshi exclaimed that she was very clever.
- b. Shakshi exclaimed with joy that she was very clever.
- c. Shakshi exclaimed that she is very clever.
- d. Shakshi said that she was very clever.

13. Bhaskar said to Kapil, "Please do come some time."

- a. Bhaskar requested Kapil to do come sometime.
- b. Bhaskar requested Kapil to come sometime.
- c. Bhaskar asked Kapil to come sometime.
- d. Bhaskar requested Kapil to please come sometime.

14. Kiran asked me, "Did you see the Cricket match on television last night?"

- a. Kiran asked me whether I saw the Cricket match on television the previous night.
- b. Kiran asked me whether I had seen the Cricket match on television the previous night.
- c. Kiran asked me did I see the Cricket match on television the last night.
- d. Kiran asked me whether I had seen the Cricket match on television the last night.

15. David said to Anna, "Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow."

- a. David told Anna that Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow.
- b. David told Anna that Mona left for her native place the next day
- c. David told Anna that Mona would be leaving for her native place tomorrow.
- d. David told Anna that Mona would leave for her native place the next day.

16. He said to her, "What a cold day!"

- a. He told her that it is a cold day.
- b. He said that it is a cold day.
- c. He exclaimed that it is a cold day.
- d. He exclaimed that it was a cold day.

17. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?"

- a. The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening.
- b. The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening.
- c. The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.
- d. The tailor asked him if he will like to the suit ready by the next evening.

18. Sushant said to him, "I have been helping your son for years".

- a. Sushant told him that he has helped his son for years.
- b. Sushant told him that he have been helping his son for years.
- c. Sushant told him that he had been helping his son for years.
- d. Sushant told him that he has been helping his son for years.

19. Rahul said to me, " I had gone through it."

- Rahul told me that he have went through it.
- Rahul told me that he have gone through it.
- Rahul told me that he had went through it.
- Rahul told me that he had gone through it.

20. Sheela said, "I must go."

- Sheela said that she had to go.
- Sheela said that I must go.
- Sheela said that she need to go.
- Sheela said that she must went.

21. The children said, "Let us complete homework together."

- The children told that let them complete homework together.
- The children told that they should complete homework together.
- The children suggested that they should complete homework together.
- The children asked that they should complete homework together.

22. They said to me, "May you live long."

- They prayed for me that I might live long.
- They blessed me that I might live long.
- They blessed me that I may live long.
- They blessed me that may I live long.

23. He said, "May God bless you."

- He prayed that God bless him.
- He prayed that may God bless him.
- He told that may God bless him.
- He prayed that might God bless him.

24. She said, " Ugh! I have hated him."

- She exclaimed with disgust that she had been hated him.
- She exclaimed with disgust that she had hated him.
- She exclaimed with sorrow that she had hated him.
- She exclaimed with disgust that I had hated him.

25. I said her, "Could you please help me?"  
a. I requested her to help me.  
b. I asked her to help me.  
c. I told her if she can help me.  
d. I asked her if she can help me.

**ANSWER KEY**

1	C	9	A	17	C	25	A
2	B	10	D	18	C		
3	B	11	C	19	D		
4	A	12	A	20	A		
5	A	13	B	21	C		
6	A	14	B	22	B		
7	C	15	D	23	D		
8	C	16	D	24	B		

LITERATURE SECTION  
FIRST FLIGHT (PROSE)

GLIMPSES OF INDIA

**PART-1 A BAKER FROM GOA**

**SUMMARY**

A baker from Goa is a story that relates to the time when there was Portuguese rule in Goa. The story is of a baker living in a Goan village. During those times people ate loaves of bread. These were made in big furnaces. The bakers known as paders would come to sell these bread in the street and would make a jingle sound with the bamboo. Although, nowadays we may not see these loaves but may sometimes see the furnaces and some bakers carrying on the traditional business of their forefathers. The author remembers the coming of the baker twice a day during his childhood days. He was the author's friend and guide. The maidservants in the author's house would buy loaves of bread which they ate with tea.

During those days, bread was an important part of any occasion especially the sweet bread, Bol. Also, the baker had a peculiar dress, Kabai. It was a single-piece frock that would reach up to knees. Baking was a profitable business at that time.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS**

**1. 'A Baker From Goa' is a pen-portrait jotted down by a great Konkani essayist**

---

(A)Lucio de Gama  
(B)Lucio Rodrigues  
(C)Lucio Henry IV  
(D)Lucio Patricks

**2. A glimpse of what can we see in the extract 'A Baker From Goa'?**

(A)changes which took place in the life of the baker with the passage of time  
(B)Traditional Goan villages  
(C)Traditional Goan bakeries  
(D)Traditional Goan weddings

**3. The new generation of bakers are also known as \_\_\_\_\_ in Goa, as per the chapter ‘A Baker From Goa’.**

- (A)pader
- (B)new bakers
- (C)traditional bakers
- (D)loafs

**4. In Goa, marriage gifts are meaningless without one important thing, as seen in chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’. It is?**

- (A)Sweet bread
- (B)BoI
- (C)Loaf
- (D)Both (A) & (B)

**5. What were the Portugese famous for, as mentioned in the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’?**

- (A)Living standards
- (B)Housing designs
- (C)Traditional dresses
- (D)Preparing loaves of bread

**6. According to the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’, the \_\_\_\_\_ in which the bread was baked still exists there.**

- (A)bakery
- (B)restaurant
- (C)the kitchen
- (D)furnaces

**7. What produces the traditional baker’s sound as per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’?**

- (A)flute
- (B)Banjo
- (C)Whistle
- (D)Bamboo

**8. Who was the author’s friend & guide, as mentioned in the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’?**

- (A)The baker
- (B)The Portuguese baker
- (C)The old baker
- (D)The new baker

**9. What did the servants from different houses do, as per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’?**

- (A)Prohibit the baker from entering the village
- (B)Stop the villagers from buying bread
- (C)Resale the bread bought from the baker
- (D)Bought loaves from the baker

**10. As per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa, the author ran to the baker for buying\_\_\_\_\_.**

**A)bread bangles**

- B)loaves
- (C)pieces of bread
- (D)All of the above

**11. The baker made the sound ‘\_\_\_\_\_’ by banging his bamboo on the ground, as per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’.**

- (A)trang, trang
- (B)jhang, jhang
- (C)bang, bang
- (D)None of the above

**12.What do the elders think about their past?**

- (a) They miss the good old days.
- (b) They remember their bad days.
- (c) They think younger are slow.
- (d) None of the Above

**13.How many times did the baker come everyday?**

- (a) Once
- (b) Twice
- (c) Thrice
- (d) varies daily

**14. How did the baker make the sound ‘jhang, jhang’, as per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’?**

- (A)By banging his special bamboo stick on the ground
- (B)By blowing hard into the bamboo stick
- (C)By rubbing the bamboo stick in his palms
- (D)By banging the bamboo stick on a plate

**15. What can still be seen in Goa, according to the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’?**

- (A)Traditional Portuguese dresses
- (B)Traditional work of the bakers
- (C)Traditional Portuguese bread
- (D)None of the above

**16. As per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’, a party or a feast loses its charm without \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A)Fenny
- (B)Goan bread
- (C)Goan cakes
- (D)None of the above

**17. Another name for sweet breads in Goa is \_\_\_\_\_, which is mentioned in the chapter ‘A Baker From Goa’.**

- (A)sweet loaf
- (B)BoI
- (C)Goan bread
- (D)traditional bread

**18. What is the pen-portrait ‘A Baker from Goa’ all about?**

- (A)A traditional Goan baker
- (B)A traditional bread
- (C)A traditional business
- (D)A traditional Goan village baker

**19. As per the chapter, ‘A Baker From Goa’, who still holds an important place in the society?**

- (A)The poet
- (B)A traditional village baker
- (C)Mr. Lucio Rodrigues
- (D)None of the above

**20- \_\_\_\_\_ was called kabai.(a)**

- A) Baker’s dress
- B) baker’s basket
- C) baker’s bamboo
- D) baker’s song

**21- What did the children long for? (b)**

- Loaves
- bread bangles

banana bread

all of the above

### ANSWERS:

(B)Lucio Rodrigues

(A)changes which took place in the life of the baker with the passage of time

(A)pader

(D)Both (A) & (B)

(D)Preparing loaves of bread

(D)furnaces

(D)Bamboo

(A)The baker

(D)Bought loaves from the baker

**(A)bread bangles**

(B)jhang, jhang

(a) They miss the good old days.

(b) Twice

(A)By banging his special bamboo stick on the ground

(B)Traditional work of the bakers

(B)Goan bread

(B)BoI

(D)A traditional Goan village baker

(B)A traditional village baker

(A) Baker's dress

(B) bread bangles

### EXTRCT BASED MCQ

Read the given extract to attempt the questions that ~~follow~~

During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide.

He used to come at least twice a day. Once, when he set out in the morning on his selling round, and then again, when he returned after emptying his huge basket. The jingling thud of his bamboo woke us up from sleep and we ran to meet and greet him. Why was it so? Was it for the love of the loaf? Not at all. The loaves were bought by some Paskine orBastine, the maid-servant of the house! What we longed for were those bread-bangles which we chose carefully. Sometimesit was sweet bread of special make.(Glimpses of India)

1.What according to the narrator was the reaction of the children on hearing the

baker's bamboo thud?

1. They avoid the loud noise and would turn around and sleep.
2. They would wake up from their sleep.
3. They would jump out of bed quickly.
4. They would run to meet and greet him.
5. They would go to buy loaves

**Choose the correct option from the following:**

**(a)** (1) and (5)

**(b)** (2), (3) and (4)

**(c)** (2) and (3)

**(d)** (3) (4) and (5)

**2. Select the option which displays an example of "jingling"**

**(a)** The hawker pushed through the crowd in the market.

**(b)** The little boy ran across the road to fetch the ball.

**(c)** The ice-cream vendor began ringing a small bell attached to his cart on the beach.

**(d)** The two old women were strolling in the park

**3. From the options given below, identify the attitude of the children in the extract:**

**(a)** Frightened

**(b)** Restless

**(c)** Excited

**(d)** Hesitant

**4. 'Not at all' in the above extract means...**

**Choose one from the following to answer:**

**(a)** Of course

**(b)** In every respect

**(c)** By no means

**(d)** Absolutely

**5. Select the most appropriate option for (1) and (2).**

**(1)Paskine or Bastine were male servants of the house.**

**(2)The narrator ate only the sweet bread bangles.**

(a)(1) is true and (2) is false.

(b) (2) is the opposite of (1).

(c)(1) furthers the meaning of (2).

(d)Both (1) and (2) cannot be inferred from the extract.

Answers

**1. (b) (2), (3) and (4)**

**2. (c) The ice-cream vendor began ringing a small bell attached to his cart on the beach.**

**3. (c) Excited**

**4. (c) By no means**

**5.(d) Both (1) and (2) cannot be inferred from the extract**

II.We kids would be pushed aside with a mild rebuke and the loaves would be delivered to the servant. But we would not give up. We would climb a bench or the parapet and peep into the basket, somehow. I can still recall the typical fragrance of those loaves. Loaves for the elders and the bangles for the children. (Glimpses of India)

**1.Why were the children reproached when the baker arrived?**

1.So that the children could not smell the fragrance.

2.So that the loaves would be delivered to the servant.

3.So that the loaves would be delivered to the elders.

4.So that the bangles could be given to the servant.

5.So that the elders get the loaves and the children the bangles.

**Choose the correct option from the following:**

**(a) (1) and (5)**

**(b) (1), (3) and (4)**

**(c) Only 2**

**(d) (2) and (5)**

**2. Select the option which displays an example of 'would not give up'.**

- (a) Jack trekked along despite injuries and reached the mountain top
- (b) I had a lot of losses and can't bear to lose anymore
- (c) People saw the smoke coming from the shop and ran helter-skelter.
- (d) Raj jumped in to the pool and swam back safely.

**3. Select the most appropriate option for (1) and (2).**

- (1) We would climb a bench or the parapet and peep into the basket.
- (2) The children would yield to the rebuking.

- (a) (1) is true and (2) is false.
- (b) (2) is the opposite of (1).
- (c) furthers the meaning of (2).
- (d) Both (1) and (2) cannot be inferred from the extract.

**4. From the options given below, identify the attitude of the children in the extract:**

- (a) Scared
- (b) Restless
- (c) Determined
- (d) Hesitant

**5. What do you understand from the statement when the narrator says the following?**

*I can still recall the typical fragrance of those loaves.*

**Choose one from the following to answer:**

- (a) The narrator is hungry when he sees the loaves
- (b) The narrator remembers the fragrance of the loaves.
- (c) The narrator is unsure of the fragrance of the loaves.
- (d) The narrator has the memory of the baker.

## Answers

1. (c) Only 2
2. (a) Jack trekked along despite injuries and reached the mountain top.
3. (a) (1) is true and (2) is false.
4. (c) Determined
5. (b) The narrator remembers the fragrance of the loaves.

## SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1. What are the elders in Goa nostalgic about?
2. How do we get to know that the makers of bread still exist?
3. Who invites the comment – “he is dressed like a pader?” Why?
4. What did the bakers wear -i) in the Portuguese days ? ii) when the author was young?

or

What is Kabai ? Give a brief description.

5. Is bread an important part of Goan life? How do you know this?
6. “Even today any person with a jackfruit -like physical appearance is easily compared to a baker.” Explain.
7. ‘Baking was indeed ,a profitable profession.’ Justify the statement with reference to the extract ‘A Baker from Goa’.
8. How does the writer know about the arrival of the baker? Why are they anxiously waiting for him?
9. What did the baker mean to the narrator during his childhood? How many times did he pay a visit?
10. Why did the young children in Goa not wash their mouth ?

## ANSWERS

1. The elders in Goa are nostalgic about the good old Portuguese days and their love of bread and loaves. The writer says that the eaters of the loaves have left but the makers still exist.

2. The narrator states that the eaters of loaves might have vanished but the makers are still there. They say that those age-old, time-tested furnaces still exist and the fire in the furnaces has not yet been extinguished.

3. Any person who is wearing a half pant which reaches just below the knees invites this comment. This is because the baker, known as a pader, used to dress like that.

4.(i) The bakers were usually dressed up in a peculiar dress called Kabai. It was a single piece long frock reaching down to the knees.

(ii) During his childhood days, the author saw the bakers wearing shirt and trousers which were shorter than full length ones and longer than half pants.

5. Bread is still an important part of Goan life. Marriage gifts are meaningless and a party or a feast loses its charm without bread. Sandwiches are important for a daughter's engagement. This shows the fact that the bread makers are still there.

6. Bakers had a plump physique which meant they were happy and prosperous and hence, even today any person with a jackfruit like physical appearance is compared to a baker.

7. Baking was indeed, a profitable profession in the old days. The baker and his family never starved. He, his family and his servants always looked happy and prosperous. Their plump physique was an open testimony to this.

8. The children would know about his arrival from the 'jang, jhang' sound of his bamboo stick. They would run to meet and greet him. They tried to surround the basket, but were pushed aside till the bread was delivered to the maid. Then, they were allowed to choose their bread bangles.

9. The baker or pader was an important person in the author's life. He was treated like a friend. He used to come twice a day, once in the morning to sell the bread and then while returning after emptying his basket. The author used to run to meet him in order to take the bread - bangles. He chatted and gossiped with him.

10. When the children got bread bangles from the baker in the morning, they wanted to eat those without waiting to brush their teeth or washing their mouths properly. They argued that the tiger never brushed his teeth. Hot tea could wash and clean up everything very nicely.

#### LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

Instead of enjoying their childhood, the children today are keen to enter adulthood. After reading about all the joys that the author Lucio Rodrigues had in his childhood do you think such a keenness on the part of children is desirable ?

After reading the story 'A Baker from Goa', do you think our traditions, heritage, values and practices are the roots that nourish us? Why/why not?

‘During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide.’ What does this statement imply in relation to the character of the baker?

Describe the pen-portrait of a traditional Goan village baker.

“Not enough can be said to show how important a baker can be for a village ”. How were the services of the baker required on various occasions?

OR

Why was the baker’s furnace essential in a traditional Goan village?

Rodrigues describe his childhood and the bakers of Goa. What does he remember so fondly about these bakers?

Baking was considered an important and a profitable profession in a traditional Goan village. Explain.

OR

Bread and cakes were essential of Goan life in older days. Describe the memories that the author recollects about good old Portuguese days and their loaves of bread.

Bread and cakes were an integral part of Goan life, in olden days. Based on your reading of the “A Baker from Goa”, describe the Goan culture.

“The custom of baking bread is closely associated with Goan culture”. Explain/Discuss, with reference to the chapter ‘A baker from Goa’.

## ANSWERS

1.I don’t think that the keenness of the children these days to enter adulthood is desirable. Children these days are in a hurry to enter adulthood and have access to technology. Due to this they are learning things earlier than usual and getting matured beyond their age. Hence, they are losing out their childhood and missing the joys that it brings with it. As per my thinking, they should grow at a slow pace and enjoy their childhood to the fullest. Children who miss out on their childhood cannot be a complete adult. So, they should not hurry up to be an adult and grow at nature’s pace. They must enjoy their childhood to the fullest.

2. ‘A Baker from Goa’ highlights the importance of the traditional practice of making breads for every occasion and festival of the Goan people. This tradition continues even today. This shows how our traditional practices can keep us to our past and heritage. Traditional values shape our personality and also provide us emotional support. They enable us to face difficult situations and makes us mentally strong. Traditional practices also have an impact on our behavioural pattern towards the other people in society.

3. This statement tells us that the baker was a very respected person in the Goan society because he would guide the children about good behaviour (when he mildly rebuked them for peeping into his basket and giving respect to the elders (when he wished “Good morning” to the lady of the house) etc. He was very informal with the children and so the author considered him as a friend and companion. He was not simply a vendor interested in selling what he made. Thus, he was an important character in the Goan society of those days.

4. There is a deep impact of Portuguese culture on Goan life. The baker is also a part of this culture. They are known as paders in Goa. When author was a child, one could see the traditional baker in the village. He used to be friend of children. He visited the house twice a day. Children arose with the sound of thud and jingle of the bamboo in the morning. They would run to greet him. Children were fond of sweet bread and the bread bangles. The ladies of the house bought the bread. Bakers were professional and it was a family business. It was a profitable business and most of the bakers were plump. They had their peculiar traditional dress called Kabai.

5. A baker is very important and essential for a Goan village. He does not merely represent a profession but a highly admired Portuguese tradition. His breads are essential for each and every occasion. Marriage gifts are meaningless without the sweet bread known as the bol. Cakes and bolinhas are a must for Christmas as well as other festival. He enjoys respect and love of the people. The children consider him their friend, companion and guide. Thus, the presence of the baker’s furnace in the village is absolutely necessary.

6. Rodrigues describes his childhood and old Portuguese days and their famous loaves of bread. The bakers are known pader in Goa. The writer remembers a baker fondly. The baker would come at least twice a day for selling his bread. The jingling thud of his bamboo would wake the children and they would run to meet and greet him. The children longed for his visit for those bread-bangles or sometimes for sweet bread of special make. The baker would greet the lady of the house with ‘good morning’. Then he would place his basket on the vertical bamboo. He collected the bill at the end of the month.

7. In olden days, Goa was very much influenced by the Portuguese. Baking was considered an essential and profitable profession in a traditional Goan village. The Portuguese were famous for preparing the loaves of bread. Baking was the traditional family work. The villages were

much fond of the sweet bread known as ‘bol’. The marriage gifts were meaningless without it. So the bakers furnaces were the most essential. ‘Cakes and bolinhos’ formed an important item there. At various occasions like Christmas and other festivals the bakers would collect the bill at the end of month. Baking was a profitable profession in olden days.

8. Goa in west India, called golden Goa by the Portuguese, has an important Portuguese colony in Asia. The Portuguese were driven by their desire to spread their faith to the local population. Thus the culture of Goa is deeply influenced by Portuguese culture. Modern day Goa, a state of India, is a quaint blend of tradition, religion and modernity. Hindu temples are as much a part of Goa as are Christian monuments. The culture of Goa today is a synthesis of Portuguese and Indian cultures. It is one of the most attractive cultures in India. A Goan is said to be born with music in his blood and music literally accompanies him from the cradle to the grave. Musical traditions run in generations.

9. Bread forms an essential part of the Goan culture. There is no party or festival without bread. Marriage gifts are meaningless without the sweet bread known as the bol. Any party or a feast loses its charm without bread. A baker is very important for a village. The lady of the house must prepare sandwiches on the occasion of her daughter’s engagement. Cakes and bolinhos are a must for Christmas as well as other festivals. Thus, the presence of the baker’s furnace in the village is absolutely essential. Loaves of bread are very popular in Goa and is a staple food even in remote villages. The bread has health benefits. There are still a few small bakeries left in some of the smaller towns.

## PART 2 – COORG

### Main Points:

Coorg is situated between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore.

It is called the land of rolling hills.

Coorg is inhabited by a proud race of martial men, beautiful women and wild creatures.

It is the smallest district of Karnataka.

Coorg is the home of evergreen forests, spices and coffee plantations.

September to March is the most pleasant season for the tourists.

During this period, weather is perfect and the air breathes of coffee.

The people of Coorg are fiercely independent people.

They are possibly of Greek or Arabic origin.

It is said that a part of Alexander's army settled there and married amongst the locals.

Their long black coat with an embroidered waist-belt Kuppia resembles the kuffia worn by the Arabs. Coorgi homes are known for their hospitality.

The Coorg Regiment is one of the most decorated in the Indian Army.

The first Chief of the Indian Army, General Cariappa, was a Coorgi.

The river, Kaveri, obtains its water from the hills and forests of Coorg.

High energy adventures with river rafting, canoeing, rock climbing and mountain biking are quite popular in Coorg.

Birds, bees, butterflies, Malabar squirrels and langurs find shelter in the rainforests of Coorg.

The top of the Brahmagiri hills gives you a panoramic view of the misty valley of Coorg.

India's largest Tibetan settlement at Bylakuppe is famous for its Buddhist monks and temple.

#### MULTIPLE-CHOICE QUESTIONS

##### STAND-ALONE TYPE:

1. Who is the author of "Coorg"?

- A) Arup Kumar Datta
- B) Lokesh Abrol
- C) Lucio Rodrigues
- D) None of the Above

2. Coorg is a \_\_\_\_\_ country.

- A) tea
- B) bread
- C) coffee
- D) green

3. Where is Coorg situated?

- A) Mysore
- B) Mangalore
- C) Karnataka
- D) Kerala

4. The first chief of the Indian Army is from \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) Coorg
- B) Goa
- C) Mysore
- D) Punjab

5. \_\_\_\_ river obtains its water from Coorg.

- A) Yamuna
- B) Narmada
- C) Kaveri
- D) Tapi

6. “The climb to the \_\_\_\_ hills brings you into a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg.”

- A) Brahmagiri
- B) Himalayan
- C) Nilgiri
- D) Parvati

7. What are the activities available in Coorg?

- A) River-rafting
- B) Canoeing
- C) Mountain biking
- D) All of the above

8. What is rappelling?

- A) travelling in a river in a canoe
- B) travelling in a river in a raft
- C) going down a cliff by sliding down a rope
- D) None of the Above

9. What is canoeing?

- A) travelling in a river in a canoe
- B) travelling in a river in a raft
- C) going down a cliff by sliding down a rope
- D) All of the above

#### ANSWERS

- 1. B) Lokesh Abrol
- 2. C) coffee
- 3. C) Karnataka
- 4. A) Coorg
- 5. C) Kaveri
- 6. A) Brahmagiri
- 7. D) All of the above
- 8. C) going down a cliff by sliding down a rope
- 9. A) travelling in a river in a canoe

#### EXTRACT-TYPE QUESTIONS:

Read the following extracts carefully and answer the questions that follow:

##### Question 1

Midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore sits a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. This land of rolling hills is inhabited by a proud race of martial men, beautiful women and wild creatures. Coorg, or Kodagu, the smallest district of Karnataka, is home to evergreen rainforests, spices and coffee plantations.

(a) Which kind of animals are we likely to see at Coorg?

- i. cows, horses, rare birds
- ii. wild creatures
- iii. rare breeds of monkeys
- iv. lions, tigers, jaguars

(b) What is the other name of Coorg?

- i. Mysore
- ii. Mangalore
- iii. Kodagu

iv. Bangalore

(c) Which word in the extract means the same as ‘having to do with war’?

- i. race
- ii. drifted
- iii. inhabited
- iv. martial

(d) What does not Coorg have?

- i. hills
- ii. evergreen rainforests
- iii. spices and coffee plantations
- iv. beaches

Answers:

- (a) wild animals
- (b) Kodagu
- (c) Martial
- (d) beaches

Question 2.

The fiercely independent people of Coorg are possibly of Greek or Arabic descent. As one story goes, a part of Alexander’s army moved south along the coast and settled here when return became impractical. These people married amongst the locals and their culture is apparent in the martial traditions, marriage and religious rites, which are distinct from the Hindu mainstream.

(a) Which descent do the people of Coorg belong to?

- i. Greek
- ii. Arabic
- iii. Greek or Arabic
- iv. Roman

(b) Where can we find the culture of Coorg most apparently?

- i. Martial traditions
- ii. Marriages
- iii. Religious rites
- iv. All the above

(c) Which word in the extract means ‘an act that is part of a religious ceremony’?

i. traditions

ii. descent

iii. rites

iv. distinct

(d) Which story is famous about the people of Coorg?

i. They were the descendants of Alexander

ii. They are the descendants of Mysore kings

iii. They purely belong to Coorg

iv. They are descendants of Alexander's army who married among the locals

#### ANSWERS:

a. iii. Greek or Arabic

b. iv. All the above

c. iii. rites

d. iv. They are descendants of Alexander's army who married among the locals

#### CASE-BASED QUESTION:

The following picture depicts \_\_\_\_\_

i. The traditional Coorgi dress called kuppia

ii. The "kuffia" worn by the Arabs and the Kurds

iii. The uniform of Alexander's soldiers

iv. The uniform of Coorg Regiment



ANSWER: i. The traditional Coorgi dress called kuppia

#### ASSERTION-REASON BASED QUESTIONS:

1. Assertion (A): Coorg, or Kodagu, the smallest district of Karnataka, is home to evergreen rainforests, spices and coffee plantations.

Reason (R): Evergreen rainforests cover thirty percent of this district.

- a. Both (A) and (R) are true.
- b. Both (A) and (R) are false.
- c. (R) is the correct explanation for (A).
- d. (A) is the reason for (R).

2. Assertion (A): During the monsoons, it pours enough to keep many visitors away.

Reason (R): Visitors do not like to visit Coorg during monsoons.

- a. (A) and (R) are not related to each other.
- b. Both (A) and (R) are false.
- c. (R) is the correct explanation for (A).
- d. (A) is true, but (R) is false.

3. Assertion (A): The air breathes of invigorating coffee.

Reason (R): Coffee estates and colonial bungalows stand tucked under tree canopies in prime corners.

- a. (A) and (R) are not related to each other.
- b. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- c. (R) is one of the reasons for (A).
- d. (R) is true, but (A) is false.

4. Assertion (A): The theory of Arab origin draws support from the long, black coat with an embroidered waist-belt worn by the Kodavus.

Reason (R): Arabs wear kuffia.

- a. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- b. (A) and (R) are not connected to each other.
- c. (R) is a good explanation for (A).
- d. (R) is true, but (A) is false.

5. Assertion (A): Coorgi homes have a tradition of hospitality, and they are more than willing to recount numerous tales of valour related to their sons and fathers.

Reason (R): Coorgis do not like to narrate their tales of valour.

- a. (A) and (R) oppose each other.
- b. Both (A) and (R) are false.
- c. (R) is the correct explanation for (A).
- d. Both (A) and (R) are true.

6. Assertion (A): Even now, Kodavus are the only people in India permitted to carry firearms without a licence.

Reason (R): Indians generally need licence to carry firearms.

- a. (A) and (R) are not related to each other.
- b. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- c. (R) supports the information given in (A).
- d. (R) is true, but (A) is false.

7. Assertion (A): The river, Kaveri, obtains its water from the hills and forests of Coorg.

Reason (R): The hills and forests of Coorg supplies water to the river Kaveri.

- a. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- b. (A) and (R) are mean the same.
- c. (R) is the correct explanation for (A).
- d. (R) is true, but (A) is false.

8. Assertion (A): Elephants enjoy being bathed and scrubbed in the river by their mahouts.

Reason (R): Elephants love to spend time in water.

- a. (A) and (R) are not related to each other.
- b. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- c. (R) is a good reason for (A).
- d. (R) is true, but (A) is false.

9. Assertion (A): Macaques, Malabar squirrels, langurs and slender loris keep a watchful eye from the tree canopy.

Reason (R): Macaques, Malabar squirrels, langurs and slender loris scare the visitors.

- a. Both (A) and (R) are true.
- b. Both (A) and (R) are false.
- c. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- d. (R) is true, but (A) is false.

10. Assertion (A): Running into Buddhist monks from India's largest Tibetan settlement, at nearby Bylakuppe, is a bonus.

Reason (R): Bylakuppe is a worthy place to visit while in Coorg.

- a. (A) and (R) are not related to each other.
- b. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- c. (R) is true, but (A) is false.
- d. (R) supports the information given in (A).

#### ANSWERS

- a. Both (A) and (R) are true.
- c. (R) is the correct explanation for (A).
- c. (R) is one of the reasons for (A).
- c. (R) is a good explanation for (A).
- a. (A) and (R) oppose each other.
- c. (R) supports the information given in (A).
- b. (A) and (R) are mean the same.
- c. (R) is a good reason for (A).
- c. (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- d. (R) supports the information given in (A).

#### SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS: (30-40 WORDS)

1. From whom have the inhabitants of Coorg descended, as per the legend?

**Ans:** As per the legend, a part of Alexander's army, when retreating from India, went South and settled in Coorg when they found that they could not return home. Then they married among the locals and their descendants are the Kodavus, that is the people of Coorg.

**2. The people of Coorg have a tradition of courage and bravery. How has it been recognized in modern India?**

**Ans.** Coorgis are a proud race of martial men and beautiful women. They are very hospitable and entertain their guests by relating stories of bravery of their sons and fathers. Coorg soldiers are brave. Coorg regiment is one of the most decorated ones in the Indian army. Corgies are the only people who are permitted to carry firearms without a licence.

**3. Coorg is a tourist's paradise. Discuss with reference to the extract from 'Glimpses of India'.**

**Ans.** Coorg is the smallest district of Karnataka, situated midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore. It is a beautiful region of 'rolling hills' and lush green rainforests. It is famous for coffee, spices, and rain forests. It is also famous for hospitality, valour, wildlife and adventure sports.

**4. Describe the climate, birds and animals of Coorg.**

**Ans.** During the monsoons, Coorg has a lot of rains. It pours enough to keep many tourists away. The best tourist season starts from September and continues till March. The very air of Coorg smells of Coffee. Kingfishers, squirrels, langurs, wild elephants, bees and butterflies abound in the rainforests of Coorg.

**5. Describe the origin of Kaveri and the area around it.**

**Ans.** The river, Kaveri, originates from the hills and forests of Coorg. Mahaseer, a large freshwater fish abound in these waters. Kingfishers dive for their catch. The squirrels and langurs drop half-eaten fruit for the mischief of enjoying the splash and ripples in the clear water. A walk across the bridge leads to the sixty-four-acre island of Nisargadhama.

**6. How do the most laidback individuals become the life of high-energy adventures in Coorg?**

**Ans.** Coorg offers many outdoor high-energy adventures. Even the most laidback individuals become converts to the life of high-energy adventures. They enjoy river rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock climbing and mountain biking. Numerous walking trails in Coorg are a favourite with trekkers.

**Q7. Where and how can we have a panoramic view of the misty landscape of Coorg from?**

**Ans.** The tourists are advised not to miss a climb to the Brahmagiri hills. The climb to the Brahmagiri hills gives you a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg. Then you can walk across the rope bridge. It will lead you to the sixty-four-acre island of Nisargadhama.

**Q8 Describe the largest Buddhist settlement in Coorg.**

**Ans.** Below the rolling hills lie the largest Tibetan settlement in India in Coorg. The Buddhist temple at Bylakuppe is famous for its grandeur and beauty. The monks in their red, ochre and yellow robes represent the heart and soul of India, in Coorg.

**Q9 What are the various adventure sports available in Coorg?**

**Ans:** The various adventures sports available in Coorg to the tourists who visit Coorg are river rafting, canoeing, rappelling or going down a cliff by sliding down a rope, rock climbing, mountain biking and trekking.

**LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (100-120 words)****1. The Coorgis are the descendants of the Greeks or the Arabs and are still able to maintain their traditional practices. Do you agree that following these practices today is important? Why or why not?**

**Ans:** After reading the text, I feel that it is important to follow the traditional practices, as it has kept the tradition of Coorgis known to the people even today. If the people of Coorg had not followed it their tradition would have perished and nobody would have remembered them today because of their culture and traditional practices. According to the text, their traditions can be seen in the martial traditions, religious rites and marriages. The Kodavus even wear the dress which resembles Arabs. Traditional practices also play a very important role in maintaining values amongst people and have an impact on shaping the behaviour of people.

**2. How do Coorg's location, people and natural features add to the diversity of India?**

**Ans:** Coorg, or Kodagu, the smallest district of Karnataka, is home to evergreen rainforests, spices and coffee plantations. Evergreen rainforests cover thirty percent of this district. During the monsoons, it pours enough to keep many visitors away. The season of joy commences from September and continues till March. The weather is perfect, with some showers thrown in for good measure. The air breathes of invigorating coffee. Coffee estates and colonial bungalows stand tucked under tree canopies in prime corners. Coorg is beautifully located and described as a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. It has rolling hillsides with a pollution free river and forests teeming with wildlife. Here nature exists in its pristine glory, which adds to the diversity of India. Further, it has coffee and spice plantations, quite different from the rest of India. The local people, the Kodavus, are a martial race. Of course, they are well known for their hospitality, just like all Indians. All these features of Coorg add to the diversity of our country.

**3. Describe the physical and geographical features of Coorg.**

**Ans:** Coorg is a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the Kingdom of God. This is a land of rolling hills inhabited by a proud race of martial men, beautiful women, coffee and wild elephants. Coorg or Kodagu is the smallest district of Karnataka. It is home to evergreen forests, spices and coffee plantation. This beautiful region of rolling hills, rainforests and mist lies between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore. Rainforests dominate the physical feature of Coorg. They cover more than thirty per cent of this district. It rains heavily during the monsoons. The most ideal season for the tourists starts in September and ends in March. The river Kaveri obtains its water from the hills and rainforests of Coorg. The region abounds in wild elephants and langurs besides a lot of birds, bees and butterflies. The Brahmagiri hills provide a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg. The sixty-four-acre island of Nisargadhamma is a little paradise for the tourists.

#### **4. What are popular theories regarding the descent of the people of Coorg?**

**Ans.** Coorgi people are distinct people. Their religious practices, marriages and traditions are distinct from the Hindu mainstream. There are two theories regarding the descent of the Coorgi people. It is believed that perhaps they are of Greek or Arabic descent. According to one theory, a part of Alexander's army moved south along the coast. Their return became impractical. These people settled down there. They married amongst the locals. Another theory gives their descent to the Arabs. The theory of Arab origin draws support from their dress which resembles the traditional Arabic dress. Their long, black coat with an embroidered waist-belt worn by the Kodavus, known as Kuppia, resembles the kuffia worn by the Arabs and the Kurds.

#### **5. Describe the rainforests, the river Kaveri and coffee plantations in Coorg.**

**Ans.** Coorg is a land of rolling hills and rainforests. The rainforests dominate the landscape of Coorg. They cover over thirty per cent of Coorg. The rainforests have a lot of rains during the monsoons. The ideal tourists season starts from September and ends in March. The hills and rainforests are the sources of the river Kaveri. Mahaseer, a large freshwater fish, abound in Kaveri waters. The forests of Coorg have a rich flora and fauna. Birds, bees, butterflies, Malabar squirrels, langurs and wild elephants find their shelter in the rainforests of Coorg. The very air of Coorg smells of fresh coffee. Coffee estates and colonial buildings are scattered all around amid the rolling hills.

**6. Why does the author call Coorg ‘a piece of heaven’ that must have drifted from the kingdom of God?**

**Ans.** Coorg is among the most beautiful regions of India. The author rightly calls it ‘a piece of heaven’ that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. This land of rolling hills it is also the home of beautiful rain-forests. The rainforests cover more than thirty per cent of Coorg. The evergreen rain forests have a rich flora and fauna. The very air of Coorg breathes of fresh coffee. The beautiful sprawling coffee estates are dotted with colonial bungalows. The river Kaveri obtains its water from the hills and rainforests of Coorg. Kingfishers dive for Mahaseer, a large freshwater fish in these waters. Squirrels and langurs drop partially eaten fruit into the clear water. Elephants enjoy being bathed and scrubbed in the Kaveri by their mahouts. The climb to the Brahmagiri hills gives you a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg. The sixty-four-acre island of Nisargadhama is a little paradise for tourists. So are the temples and Buddhist monks wearing red, ochre and yellow robes? All of them represent the heart and soul of India.

**7. What does the writer say about the natural beauty of Coorg?**

**Ans.** Coorg is situated in Karnataka midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore. It looks like a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. This is a land of rolling hills. It is a home of evergreen rainforests, spices and coffee plantations. Evergreen forests cover thirty per cent of Coorg district. The river Kaveri flows through Coorg. Big elephants are also found here. Birds, bees and butterflies are there to give the visitors company. The climb to the Brahmagiri hills brings (the visitors) into a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg. It is said that the people searching for the heart and soul of India visit Coorg.

### PART 3

#### TEA FROM ASSAM

##### MCQ

**Choose the correct option from the following.**

1. Which state did Pranjol belong to?

a) Madhyapradesh    b) Coorg    c) Assam    d) Kerala

2. What was Pranjol's father?

- a) Clerk in a private firm
- b) doctor in a general hospital
- c) manager in a tea estate
- d) an engineer in the Railways

3. Where were Pranjol and Rajvir going?

- a) To their uncle's house in Kashmir
- b) To their mother's house at Palghat
- c) To watch a movie
- d) to Assam to spend summer holidays in Pranjol's house.

4. What could Rajvir see as far as his eyes could reach?

- a) Hills
- b) tea estates
- c) harbor with ships
- d) waste land

5. According to Rajvir how many cups of tea are drunk daily throughout the world?

- a) Over eighty crore
- b) More than 200
- c) about 1 lakh
- d) less than twenty thousand

6. According to an Indian legend, an ancient Buddhist ascetic cut off his eyelids because ----- --.

- a) he wanted to enjoy more beautiful sights
- b) he wanted to inflict pain upon himself
- c) he could bear pain as he was a monk
- d) he felt sleepy during meditation.

#### ASSERTION BASED MCQ

**1. A) Pranjol and Rajvir were students in a school in Delhi.**

**B) They were going to Assam to find the possibilities of further studies in Assam.**

**Pick out the most accurate option.**

- a) Statement A is false and statement B is true
- b) Statement B is complementary to statement A
- c) Statements A and B are false
- d) Statement A is true and B is false.

**2. A) Pranjol and Rajvir go to Assam by air.**

**B) They wanted to reach there quickly.**

**a) Statement A is the reason for statement B**

**b) Statement B is the reason for statement A**

**c) Both the statements are wrong.**

**d) Statements A and B are complementary.**

**3. A) Pranjol started reading his detective book again.**

**B) Pranjol didn't share Rajvir's excitement because he had been born and brought up on a plantation.**

**a) Statement A is the cause of statement B**

**b) Statement B is the result of statement A**

**c) Statements A and B are contradictory**

**d) Statements B is the reason for statement A**

**4. A) Tea was first drunk in China about 2700 B.C.**

**B) The words like 'Chai and 'Chini' are from the Chinese language.**

**a) Statement B supports Statement A**

**b) Statement A is contradictory to statement B**

**c) Both A and B are false statements**

**d) Statement A is partially true and statement B is true.**

**5. Pick out the wrong statement.**

**a) Pranjol's father's tea estate was situated in Meghalaya**

**b) The sprouting period lasts from May to July**

**c) Tea was mainly drunk in Europe as a medicine**

**d) Rajvir went to Assam to spend his vacation with his friend.**

### **EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS**

**Read the extract and answer the questions**

1. "I have been reading as much as I could about tea.- Rajvir said. "No one really knows who discovered tea but there are many legends."

"What legends?"

"Well, there's the one about the Chinese emperor who always boiled water before drinking it. One day a few leaves off the twigs burning under the pot fell into the water giving it a delicious flavour. it is said they were tea-leaves."

a) Who are the two people engaged in this conversation?

**b) What kind of water did the Chinese emperor drink?**

**c) What happened when a few leaves of the twigs fell into the water kept for boiling?**

**d) Who is the writer?**

2. Pranjol's father slowed down to allow a tractor, pulling a trailer-load of tea leaves, to pass.

"This is the second-flush or sprouting period, isn't it, Mr Barua ?" Rajvir asked. "It lasts from May to July, and yields the best tea."

"You seem to have done your homework before coining." Pranjol's father said in surprise.

"Yes, Mr Barua," Rajvir admitted. "But I hope to learn much more while I'm here."

(a) Why did Mr Barua feel surprised?

(b) How did Rajvir want to spend his stay there?

(c) Where were Rajvir and Mr Barua going?

d) Why did Mr. Barua slow down his car?

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

1. Who were Rajvir and Pranjol? Where were they going?

2. Describe the magnificent view of the tea estate that greeted Rajvir.

OR

What made Rajvir amazed or excited on his way to the estate?

3. Why did Pranjol not share Rajvir's excitement?

4. How are tea pluckers different from other farm labourers in the state?
5. What is the legend from China about the discovery of tea?
6. What myth do the Indians have about the origin of tea as a drink?
7. What is the information given by Pranjol's father to Rajvir about the tea estate in Assam?
8. What were the two friends doing when the train left the station?
9. When and where was tea drunk first? When did it reach Europe?
10. What is the best season for the production of tea?
11. How do you know that tea is a popular beverage in the world?
12. What did Rajvir see in Dhekiabari Tea Estate managed by Pranjol's father?
13. Why did Pranjol's father say in amazement that Rajvir had done his homework before coming to Assam?
14. Where and how are tea leaves collected in Assam?

### **Long Answer Type Questions**

1. Describe the legends related to the discovery of tea.
2. What information do you gather about the discovery of tea from the lesson Tea from Assam?
3. Describe the landscape that fascinated Rajvir while he was travelling by train? Why did Pranjol not share his excitement?
4. Pranjol's father appreciates Rajvir's knowledge about the tea plantations in Assam. Do you support his view? Give reasons for your answer.
5. Although Pranjol was a native of Assam, it was Rajvir who knew much about the state of Assam. Do you agree with it? Answer with reference to their visit of Dhekiabari Tea Estate in Assam.

### **ANSWER KEY**

#### **MCQ**

1. C) – Assam

2. C) – Manager in a tea estate
3. d) to Assam to spend summer holidays in Pranjol's house.
4. b) tea estates
5. a) Over eighty crore
6. d) he felt sleepy during meditation

### **ASSERTION BASED MCQ**

- 1. Statement A is true and B is false**
- 2. Both the statements are wrong.**
- 3. Statements B is the reason for statement A**
4. Statement B supports Statement A
5. Pranjol's father's tea estate was situated in Meghalaya

### **EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS**

A a) Pranjol and Ranjvir who were students from Delhi

b) The Emperor of China would drink only boiled water.

c) When the tea leaves and twigs fell into the water as it began to boil, it gave out a delicious flavour.

d) Arup Kumar Dutta

B (a) He was surprised to know that Rajvir knows a lot about tea plants

(b) He wanted to learn much more about tea plants.

(c) They were going to Dhekiabari Tea Estate.

(d) He wanted to allow a tractor, pulling a trailer-load of tea leaves to pass.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

1. Pranjol and Rajvir were friends. Pranjol belonged to Assam. He was studying in a school in Delhi. Rajvir was his classmate. Pranjol's father was the manager of a tea-garden in Upper

Assam. Pranjol invited Rajvir to visit his home during the summer vacation. Both of them travelled to Assam by a train.

2. Rajvir had never seen so much greenery before. He was looking at the beautiful scenery. The soft green paddy fields gave way to tea bushes. Against the backdrop of densely wooded hills, a sea of tea bushes stretched as far as the eyes could see. The orderly rows of bushes were pruned to the same height. Rajvir was really excited to see the magnificent view. Amidst the orderly rows of tea bushes, were doll-like figures plucking tea leaves.

3. Pranjol didn't share Rajvir's excitement because he had been born and brought up on a tea plantation. He was familiar with tea gardens. So he started reading a detective novel. On the other hand, Rajvir was excited as he had never visited any tea plantation ever before. A sea of bushes stretching as far as the eyes could see fascinated him. The magnificent view, orderly rows of tea bushes really excited him.

4. The tea pluckers are different from other farm labourers. The women plucking tea leaves in the tea gardens look like dolls. They wear plastic aprons and carry baskets at their backs to put tea leaves in them.

5. There is an ancient legend about the discovery of tea. A Chinese emperor had the habit of drinking boiled water. One day a twig from the fire fell into the pot in which water was being boiled. It gave a delicious flavour to the water. It is said that those were tea leaves and that was the first tea. It is thus thought that tea was first taken in China.

6. The Indian legend about the origin of tea as a beverage is as follows. Once there was a Buddhist, ascetic Bodhidharma who used to feel sleepy during meditations. So he cut off his eyelids. Ten tea plants grew out of the eyelids. When the leaves of these plants were put in hot water and drunk, they banished sleep.

7. He was the manager of a tea garden in upper Assam. He showed Pranjol and Rajvir the acres of tea bushes, all neatly pruned to the same height. Groups of women pluckers with bamboo baskets were plucking the newly sprouted leaves.

8. When the train moved ahead, there were huge fields full of green plantations. Rajvir had never seen so much greenery. He called it a 'magnificent view'. The bushes were spread like a sea against the backdrop of densely wooded hills.

9. Tea came to Europe in the sixteenth century. It is believed that tea was first drunk in China in 2700 B.C. Words like 'chai' and 'chini' are Chinese. Tea came to Europe in the sixteenth century. At first, it was used more as a medicine than as a beverage.

10. Rajvir and Pranjol reached Assam in the sprouting season. This season lasts from May to July. The best tea is produced during this season.

11.Tea is decidedly a very popular beverage in the world. More than eighty crore cups of tea are drunk every day throughout the world. At every platform in India, you can hear vendors crying “Chai-garam”. The people can’t resist buying the steaming hot cups of tea.

12.The tea estate at Dhekiabari was managed by Pranjol’s father. Rajvir saw acre upon acre of tea bushes on both sides of the gravel road. They were all pruned to the same height. Groups of tea-pluckers, wearing plastic aprons were plucking the newly sprouted leaves. It was the second sprouting period.

13.A tractor was pulling a trailer-load of tea leaves at the Dhekiabari Tea Estate. Rajvir asked Pranjol’s father if that was the second flush or sprouting period. Rajvir told that the second sprouting period lasts from May to July and yields the best tea. Such detailed information about tea leaves surprised Pranjol’s father. He told Rajvir that he seemed to have done his homework before coming here.

14.Assam has the largest number of tea estates in India. Acre upon acre of tea bushes is stretching as far as the eyes can go. All the bushes are pruned to the same height. Groups of tea pluckers carry bamboo basket on their back to collect tea-leaves. They wear plastic aprons. They pluck the newly-sprouted tea leaves from, the bushes. Then the leaves are dried and processed in factories.

#### LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

1.There are many popular legends about the discovery of tea. The Chinese legend goes like this. A Chinese emperor was used to drinking boiled water. One day a twig from the fire fell into the pot in which water was being boiled. It gave a delicious flavour to the drink. It is said that those were tea leaves.

An Indian legend goes like this. Once there was a Buddhist ascetic (monk) who used to feel sleepy during meditations. So he cut off his eyelids and threw them away. It is believed that tea plants grew out of these eyelids. When the leaves from these plants were put in hot water and drunk they banished sleep.

2. Tea was first drunk in China. Even the words ‘chai’ and ‘chini’ are from Chinese. It goes back to 2700 B.C. In the 16th century, tea came to Europe and was drunk more as a medicine than as a beverage. Assam has the largest concentration of tea plantations in the world. There

are large groups of women with bamboo baskets on their backs. They pluck the newly sprouted tea leaves from the plants and store them in the baskets.

3. Rajvir was fascinated by the scenic beauty of the place. There were vast green tea gardens on both sides of the road. The tall trees at the back of the gardens in the forest on the rolling hills looked beautiful. The women plucking tea leaves looked like dolls. On the way, he saw people drinking tea. He also saw an ugly building with smoke coming out of its chimneys. Rajvir was received by Mrs and Mr Barua and was taken towards Dhekiabari Tea Estate. On both sides of the gravel road were acres and acres of neatly pruned tea bushes. It was the second sprouting period. Women were wearing plastic aprons and plucking new tea leaves and putting them in the bamboo baskets on their backs. Rajvir was fascinated by the magnificent view of tea gardens. However, Pranjol didn't share Rajvir's excitement because he had been born and brought up on a tea plantation. He was familiar with tea gardens.

4. It is true that Rajvir had never visited a tea estate ever before in his life. His visit to Dhekiabari Tea Estate was at the invitation of his classmate Pranjol whose father managed the estate. But Rajvir seemed to have done a lot of homework and reading about tea and tea plantations before coming to Assam. He told Pranjol that tea is one of the most popular beverages in the world. More than eighty crores of cups of tea is drunk every day throughout the world. When he saw an ugly building with smoke billowing out of its tall buildings, he at once cried "Hey, a tea garden!". Actually, he had been reading as much about tea as he could. He narrated different legends regarding the discovery of tea leaves. It was Rajvir who narrated the legends describing how tea leaves were discovered in India and China. Rajvir impressed and surprised Pranjol's father about his deep knowledge of tea-leaves. When he saw a tractor pulling a trailer load of tea leaves he recognised that it was the second-flush or sprouting period. He also knew that it continues from May and to July and yields the best tea.

5. It is true that Pranjol was born and brought up on a tea plantation. His father managed Dhekiabari Tea Estate in Assam. However, his friend Rajvir's knowledge about tea and its history was more profound than him. The reason was simple. Rajvir had done a lot of reading about tea and its history. He even surprised Pranjol's father with his in-depth knowledge of the subject.

Rajvir's visit to Dhekiabari was an opportunity for him to connect his reading and knowledge to the existing tea plantation. He was fascinated by the magnificent sea of tea bushes stretching as far as his eyes could go. He saw with his own eyes the groups of tea pluckers, with bamboo baskets on their backs, plucking the newly-sprouted leaves. His studies helped him to recognise

that the trailer-load of tea leaves were the second-flush or the sprouting period that gave the best

## MADAM RIDES THE BUS

### Summary of the lesson

An eight-year-old girl, Valliammai (Valli) used to pass her time by enjoying the sight of the bus that passed by her house every day. Gradually, she developed a desire to ride on the bus. For that she collected all tiny bits of information from the passengers and neighbours. At last, she accumulated the required sum for the two-way journey. Throughout the journey, she showed her desire to be independent and was clever not to get down at an unfamiliar place also. On her way back, she got a glimpse of real life when she witnessed an accident.

### **Multiple Choice Questions**

Read the questions given below and choose the most appropriate option. Each right answer carries 1 mark.

1. Why was watching the street outside Valli's favourite pastime?
  - a) Valli didn't have playmates of her own age.
  - b) Valli didn't approve her mother's nagging, so she chose it.
  - c) Valli enjoyed every bit of it like any elaborate game played by other children.
  - d) Valli was on her summer vacation, so it was too sunny to play outside.
  
2. Read the sentence given below and choose the option related to it which is **NOT TRUE**.

The most fascinating thing of all was the bus that travelled between her village and the nearest town.

- a) It attracted Valli more towards her favourite pastime.
- b) Every time the bus provided her a new set of people to see.
- c) Because of this unending joy, she liked to watch the street all the time.
- d) There were no playmates of her own age on her street.

3. What was Valli's source of unending joy?
  - a) Watching the street happenings.
  - b) Watching the bus going up and down the village.

c) Watching the bus with a new set of people every time.  
d) All of the above.

4. Read the sentence given below and find the option which **DOES NOT** use the word 'overwhelming' as in the sentence.

This wish became stronger and stronger, until it was an overwhelming desire.

a) He had an overwhelming amount of food.  
b) She felt an overwhelming desire to giggle  
c) Rahul had an overwhelming urge to get first rank.  
d) She didn't find way to come out of her overwhelming sadness.

5. Identify the statements given below as Fact or Opinion.

i) The town was six miles away from her village.  
ii) For Valli, sixty paise was a huge sum though others might not find it so.  
iii) The trip to town takes forty-five minutes.  
iv) The fare was thirty paise one way.

a) F,O,F,O  
b) F,F,O,F  
c) O,O,F,F  
d) F,O,F,F

6. Pick out the correct option that best describes the character of Valli as in the given statement.

“Never mind, I can get on by myself. You don't have to help me.”

i) Independent  
ii) Timid  
iii) Courageous  
iv) Coward  
v) Stingy

a) i, ii, iii,iv  
b) i, iii  
c) i, iv, v  
d) ii, iii, v

7. Read the sentence given below and pick out the option which is **NOT TRUE**.

“There is nobody here who’s a child,” she said haughtily. “I’ve paid my thirty paise like everyone else.”

- a) She was annoyed by the elder man’s advice.
- b) She was proud that she had also paid the fare like everyone.
- c) She was enjoying the ride along with other passengers.
- d) None of the above.

8. Why did Valli find the woman repulsive?

- a) She had large piercing in her ears
- b) She wore ugly earrings
- c) She was chewing betel nut which could spill out any moment
- d) All of the above

9. What did the old man say to Valli that annoyed her?

- a) He shouted at her.
- b) He asked why she’s alone.
- c) He asked her to sit down.
- d) None of the above

10. Why did Valli stand up on the seat during the ride?

- a) She wanted to enjoy the ride
- b) She wasn’t able to enjoy the sights outside properly
- c) She liked standing
- d) She was tired of sitting

11. What temptations did Valli overcome to get her first ride?

- i) Avoided peppermints, toys, balloons and the like
- ii) Avoided black glass bangles and bindis
- iii) Avoided riding giant wheel during village fair day.
- iv) Avoided jalebis and colour lemonade

- a) Only i
- b) i, iii
- c) i, iii, iv
- d) All of the above

12. What was the next challenge once she’d saved enough money?

- a) tell her mom about it
- b) know about the timings
- c) buy a ticket

d) to sneak out of the house

13. What made her laugh on her journey?

- a) The sight of a running cow
- b) The old woman's earrings
- c) The old man
- d) The speck of passing train

14. Valli is a clever and responsible girl. Pick the option which justifies this statement.

- a) She avoided the drink offered by a stranger.
- b) She avoided roaming around a strange place.
- c) She was able to plan meticulously at this tender age.
- d) All of the above.

15. Valli refused to accept the conductor's treat. It tells you that she was.....

- a) responsible
- b) stubborn
- c) rude
- d) disrespectful

16. Whom does Valli mention as a "real chatterbox"?

- a) Conductor
- b) Old lady
- c) Her mother
- d) Her aunt

17. What saddened Valli?

- a) The dead cow
- b) A car accident
- c) The sight of passing train.
- d) A caged bird.

18. What can you tell about the conductor from the text?

- i) funny
- ii) grumpy
- iii) quiet
- iv) caring
- v) despicable

- a) i, iv, v
- b) i, iv
- c) ii, iii, iv

d) iii, iv, v

19. Pick out the option which is **TRUE**.

- a) Valli was not able to manage the time of journey as she had planned.
- b) Valli enjoyed the whole journey with her co-passengers
- c) Valli was caught by her mother.
- d) She became sad on seeing the dead cow.

20. What do you understand from the given sentence?

Valli: "I was just agreeing with what you said about things happening without our knowledge."

- a) She wants to poke her nose in their conversation.
- b) She wants to show her disrespect towards her talkative aunt.
- c) She realized what her mother said was true on the basis of her experience.
- d) All of the above.

21. Assertion (A): Valli calculated, recalculated, planned and replanned about the ride.

Reasoning (R): A tiny wish crept into her head and grew there and became an overwhelming desire.

- a) Both A and R are true and R is the cause of A.
- b) Both A and R are true but R is not the cause of A.
- c) A is true but R is false.
- d) A is false but R is true.

22. Assertion (A): Valli disliked the old woman.

Reasoning (R): The old woman's appearance was repulsive.

- a) Both A and R are true and R is the explanation of A.
- b) Both A and R are true but R is not the explanation of A.
- c) A is true but R is false.
- d) A is false but R is true.

### **Extract- Based Questions**

**Read the following extracts and answer the questions by choosing the right option.**

I. Day after day she watched the bus, and gradually a tiny wish crept into her head and grew there: she wanted to ride on that bus, even if just once. This wish became stronger and stronger, until it was an overwhelming desire. Valli would

stare wistfully at the people who got on or off the bus when it stopped at the street corner. Their faces would kindle in her longings, dreams and hopes. If one of her friends happened to ride the bus and tried to describe the sights of the town to her, Valli would be too jealous to listen and would shout, in English: “Proud! Proud!” Neither she nor her friends really understood the meaning of the word, but they used it often as a slang expression of disapproval.

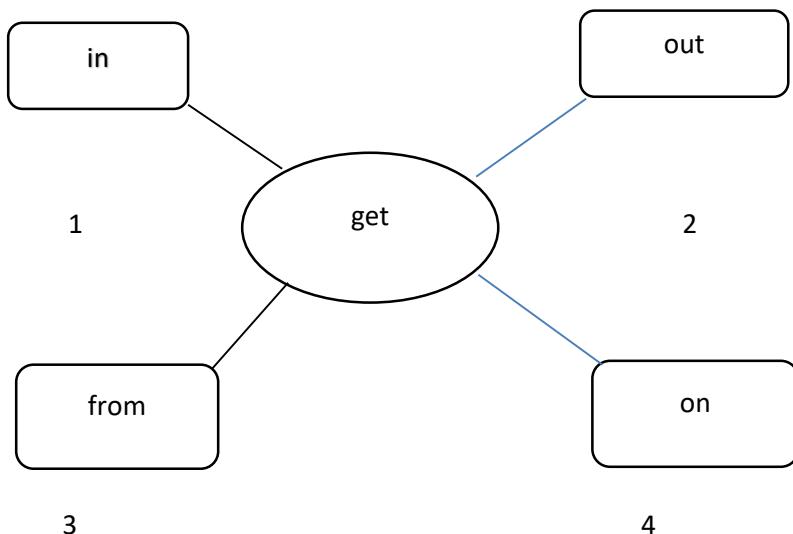
1. What wish crept into her head?
  - a) Going to the town
  - b) Getting a horse ride
  - c) Getting a ride on the bus
  - d) Going to the railway track.
2. What would be the probable emotion of Valli on hearing her friends describe the town.



- a) Image 1
- b) Image 2
- c) Image 3
- d) Image 4

3. Pick out the meaning of the word ‘wistfully’.
  - a) longingly
  - b) peacefully
  - c) challengingly
  - d) decisively

4. Find out the one which is **NOT** a phrasal verb



- a) Option 1
- b) Option 2
- c) Option 3
- d) Option 4

5. Pick out the statement which uses the word 'kindle' in the same sense as in the text.

- a) Mary was kindle to the old lady on the street
- b) It was a day of kindle.
- c) A love of art was kindled in me.
- d) There was a garden full of kindled flowers.

II. Over many days and months Valli listened carefully to conversations between her neighbours and people who regularly used the bus, and she also asked a few discreet questions here and there. This way she picked up various small details about the bus journey. The town was six miles from her village. The fare was thirty paise one way—“which is almost nothing at all,” she heard one well-dressed man say, but to Valli, who scarcely saw that much money from one month to the next, it seemed a fortune. The trip to the town took forty-five minutes. On reaching town, if she stayed in her seat and paid another thirty paise, she could return home on the same bus. This meant that she could take the one-o’clock afternoon bus, reach the town at one forty-five, and be back home by about two forty-five.

1. What does the extract mention about?
  - a) about Valli's sixth sense
  - b) about Valli's planning to get a ride on the bus
  - c) about Valli's school excursion
  - d) none of the above
2. But to Valli, who scarcely saw that much money from one month to the next, it seemed a fortune. It shows.....
  - a) that Valli belongs to a poor family
  - b) that Valli has a lot of money with her.
  - c) that Valli doesn't have any luck.
  - d) that as a child, she needs a lot of time to accumulate that sum.
3. Find an alternative word for 'fortune' from those given below.
  - a) deep pockets
  - b) alimony
  - c) discreet
  - d) ponder
4. What details did Valli collect regarding the ride?
  - a) The distance, colour of the bus, seating capacity of the bus, fare for one way
  - b) The distance, fare for one way, time takes for reaching the town
  - c) The distance, staff of the bus, co-passengers
  - d) All of the above
5. What attribute of Valli is revealed in the above passage?
  - i) dedication towards her dream
  - ii) lethargic
  - iii) too much excited to get a ride
  - iv) trying to get subtle details
  - a) i, ii
  - b) i, ii, iii
  - c) i, iii, iv
  - d) All are correct.

III. It was a new bus, its outside painted a gleaming white with some green stripes along the sides. Inside, the overhead bars shone like silver. Directly in front of Valli, above the windshield, there was a beautiful clock. The seats were soft and luxurious.

Valli devoured everything with her eyes. But when she started to look outside, she found her view cut off by a canvas blind that covered the lower part of her window. So, she stood up on the seat and peered over the blind.

1. What did Valli enjoy according to this passage?
  - a) the company of her co-passengers.
  - b) the new bus completely.
  - c) the seats of the bus.
  - d) the outside scenery.
2. Pick the word which is **NOT** a synonym of ‘devour’.
  - a) gaze
  - b) swallow
  - c) gorge
  - d) ingurgitate
3. Why did Valli stand up on the seat?
  - a) She loved travelling like that
  - b) She wants to avoid her co-passengers and the conductor.
  - c) She was not able to see the sights outside properly.
  - d) None of these.
4. Describe Valli from the above passage.
  - a) An excited little girl.
  - b) Curious to enjoy every bit of her first ride.
  - c) An innocent village girl.
  - d) All of the above.
5. Pick the correct option based on your understanding of the passage.
  - a) Valli liked the bus.
  - b) Valli didn’t like the seat inside the bus
  - c) She was annoyed by the clock of the bus
  - d) She couldn’t see the interior of the bus properly.

IV. Valli found the woman absolutely repulsive- such big holes she had in her ear lobes, and such ugly earrings in them! And she could smell the betel nut the woman was chewing and see the betel juice that was threatening to spill over her lips at any moment. Ugh! – Who could be sociable with such a person?

1. According to this passage, what was Valli’s opinion about the woman?
  - a) A very sociable and likable old lady.
  - b) A very disgusting and repulsive old lady.

c) An ugly looking middle-aged lady.  
d) A pleasing young lady.

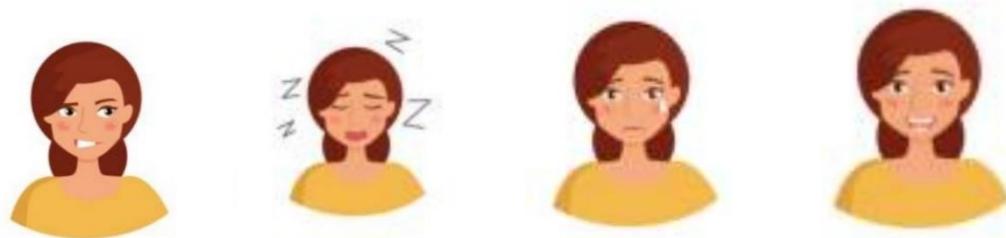
2. "Ugh! – Who could be sociable with such a person?" Guess the probable face of Valli during this time.

1

2

3

4



a) Image 1  
b) Image 2  
c) Image 3  
d) Image 4

3. Which of the following wouldn't Valli think during this time?

1. Why did she come and sit beside me?

2. She doesn't have any manners

3. I've never seen such a caring person!

4. When will she get down from the bus?



a) Option 1  
b) Option 2  
c) Option 3  
d) Option 4

4. Find the antonym of 'repulsive'.

- delightful
- pleasant
- attractive
- all of the above

5. According to Valli, the old lady is ..... character.

- a cheapskate
- a dipstick
- a laid-back
- a pain in the neck

V. "Isn't that the same cow that ran in front of the bus on our trip to town?" She asked the conductor.

The conductor nodded, and she was overcome with sadness. What had been a lovable, beautiful creature just a little while ago had now suddenly lost its charm and its life and looked so horrible, so frightening as it lay there, legs spread-eagled, a fixed stare in its lifeless eyes, blood all over....

The bus moved on. The memory of the dead cow haunted her, dampening her enthusiasm. She no longer wanted to look out the window.

- What dampened the enthusiasm of Valli?
  - The sight of an old lady chewing betel
  - The sight of the dead cow
  - The sight of stalls and stores of the town
  - The sight of her mother
- What lesson of life did Valli perceive?
  - The mystery of life and death.
  - Charm and beauty exist only till life is there in the body.
  - Life is unpredictable.
  - All of the above
- Pick out the option which did not use 'dampen' in the same way as in the passage.
  - Nothing could dampen her spirit.
  - The rain dampened her face.
  - The heat dampened the party.
  - None of these
- Find a word with a similar meaning for 'haunted' from the options given below.
  - troubled

- b) spectacular
- c) prodigious
- d) light- hearted

5. Why did the memory of the dead cow haunt Valli?

- a) because it was petted and pampered by Valli for a long time.
- b) because she became the cause of its death.
- c) because she realized that now she cannot laugh at the cow
- d) because she realized the truth of life and death through the cow.

### **Madam Rides the Bus – 2 Marks Questions**

- 1) What was a source of unending joy for Valli? What was her strongest desire?
- 2) Valli was an eight-year-old girl who was very curious about things. What was her favourite pastime?
- 3) Why did Valli not get off from the bus when it stopped at the bus stand?
- 4) Why does the conductor refer to Valli as ‘madam’?
- 5) How did Valli manage to leave the house?
- 6) How did Valli calculate and plan?
- 7) What was the most fascinating thing for Valli?
- 8) What was the tiny wish that crept into Valli’s head?
- 9) What was the next problem after Valli had enough money?
- 10) Why didn’t Valli want to have a look at the sights alone?
- 11) What kind of a person was Valli?
- 12) Why does Valli stand up on the seat? What does she see now?
- 13) What does Valli tell the elderly man when he calls her a child?
- 14) What did Valli see on her way that made her laugh?
- 15) Why didn’t she get off the bus at the bus station?
- 16) Why was Valli overcome with shyness?
- 17) What did Valli see when she peered over the blind?
- 18) Why didn’t Valli like the remark of the elderly man? What did she say to him?
- 19) How did Valli react when she saw the dead cow by the roadside?
- 20) Why does Valli refuse to look out of the window on her way back?

\*\*\*\*\*

## **Madam Rides the Bus -3 Marks Questions**

Answer the following questions in 30-40 words:

- 1) Give examples from the text to show that Valli was a meticulous planner.
- 2) How can you say that the conductor was a good-natured jolly fellow? Support your answer with examples.
- 3) What details did Valli pick up about the bus journey? How did she pick up these details?
- 4) Give reasons why Valli found the elderly woman on the bus, repulsive.
- 5) What was Valli's favourite pastime?
- 6) Why did Valli listen to the conversations? What did she get from them?
- 7) How did Valli board the bus? Why did she say, 'I can get on by myself'?
- 8) How did Valli react when the conductor called her "a very grown-up madam?"
- 9) What careful and painstaking elaborate plans did Valli have to make for her first journey and how did she save the money for it?
- 10) Why did Valli laugh until there were tears in her eyes?
- 11) Why didn't Valli get off the bus when the bus stopped at the town?
- 12) Why didn't Valli accept a free drink from the bus conductor? What does this act show about her character?
- 13) What dampened Valli's enthusiasm during the return journey?
- 14) How can you say Valli's bus ride remained a secret from her mother and aunt?
- 15) Why did Valli smile to herself? Did her mother and aunt have any chance of knowing the secret of her smile?
- 16) What did Valli see out of the window on her first journey?
- 17) Why did Valli didn't enjoy her bus ride back home?
- 18) What was Valli's deepest desire? Find the words and phrases in the story that tell you this.
- 19) What does Valli mean when she says, "I was just agreeing with what you said about things happening without our knowledge"?

\*\*\*\*\*

**Madam Rides the Bus (LA)**

**5 marks each**

1. Valli didn't like the way adults treated her during her bus journey. Do you agree /disagree with Valli's attitude towards elderly people in the story? Why?

2. In such a fast-moving world when we hear so many incidents happening with people, do you think Valli did right by not telling her mother about the bus journey?
3. The people and surroundings are a great book to learn. Valli in the lesson ‘Madam Rides the Bus’ learns a lot from others. Mention the traits of her character which help her to learn from her surroundings.
4. Age is not a barrier when it comes to doing something different and great. Which characteristics of Valli help her achieve the wonder of visiting the town at such a tender age?
5. What kind of person is Valli? Illustrate your answer from the text that you have read.

\*\*\*\*\*

## THE SERMON AT BENARES

### SUMMARY OF THE LESSON (PREPARED BY MR. SREEJITH P)

#### Early Life of Gautama Buddha

Prince Siddhartha Gautama was born in Northern India in 563 B C. He was sent for learning the sacred scriptures in Hinduism at the age of twelve. He returned home at the age of sixteen and married a princess. They had a son and the couple lived together for ten years.

#### Sufferings of the world around

At about the age of twenty-five, Siddhartha went for hunting. He happened to see a sick man, an aged man, a funeral procession and finally a monk begging for alms. These sights administered a shock for him as he was insulated from the sufferings of the world. He renounced worldly pleasures and went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows he had witnessed.

#### Enlightenment

Siddhartha wandered for seven years pursuing enlightenment and finally sat down under a Peepal tree. On the seventh day, he received enlightenment and renamed the tree as ‘Bodhi Tree’. He became known as the Buddha (the Awakened or the Enlightened) and began to teach and to share his new understandings.

Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares, regarded as the spiritual capital of India and one of the world's oldest continually inhabited cities. The sermon reflects the Buddha's wisdom about one inscrutable kind of suffering.

#### The Story of Kisa Gotami

Kisa Gotami was in deep grief when her only child died. She carried her dead son to her neighbours, pleading them for medicines. People sympathised with her grief and said, “ She had lost her senses. The boy is dead.” Seeing the plight of Kisa Gotami, a man directed her to Lord Buddha, who could pacify her.

Kisa Gotami met Lord Buddha and asked him to cure her son. Buddha asked her to bring a handful of mustard seeds from a house where no one has lost a dear one. Kisa Gotami went from house to house in her village from morning to late evening to find a house where no one had ever died. Her search proved futile.

Tired and hopeless, Kisa Gotami sat on a wayside, watching the lights of the city, as they flickered up and were extinguished again. She realised that life on earth is not constant and ascertained that no one can escape death.

\*\*\*\*\*

## VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS –

### Very Short Answer Questions

1. Siddhartha Gautama was sent for schooling at the age of.....
  - a. 12
  - b. 7
  - c. 11
  - d. 5
2. The word alms means.....
  - a. money collected by begging from rich people.
  - b. money or food, given to poor people.
  - c. money stolen from people.
  - d. family wealth
3. Siddhartha Gautama went to seek enlightenment.....
  - a. in order to get more wealth to make his kingdom better.
  - b. in order to become a saint so that he could help people.
  - c. as he was concerned about the sorrow and misery he witnessed.
  - d. as he wanted to help his kingdom abolish poverty.
4. Siddhartha Gautama sat for enlightenment.....
  - a. in the outskirts of the kingdom.
  - b. under the tree that he found after 7 days of travel.
  - c. on top of a heavy rock that was difficult to climb.
  - d. under a peepal tree
5. Siddhartha Gautama took ..... days to gain enlightenment.
  - a. 14 days
  - b. 9 days
  - c. 11 days
  - d. 7 days

6. The name Siddhartha Gautama gave to the tree, where he got enlightenment was.....

- Great Tree
- The Enlightened Tree
- The Bodhi tree
- The Budha Tree

7. The word Buddha means.....

- saint
- enlightened/awakened
- wicked
- blessed by God

8. Buddha preached his first sermon at?

- Benares
- Bennur
- Bannarghatta
- Bodh Gaya

9. The river that flows near Benares is.....

- Godavari
- Ganges
- Kaveri
- Brahmaputra

10. The death of her ..... made Kisa Gotami sorrowful

- neighbour's
- Son
- Father
- Dearest one

11. Kisa Gotami asked for medicine.....

- to cure her deaf son
- to cure her suffering
- to cure her dead son
- to make everyone believe that she is caring

12. The physician he referred to was.....

- his Neighbour
- the physician from the Royal Palace
- Kisa Gotami
- Gouthama Buddha

13. In order to help the lady Gouthama Buddha asked her to bring.....

- a handful of mustard from a poor man's house.
- a handful of mustard from the house where deaths have happened
- a handful of mustard seeds from a house where no one has lost a beloved to death.
- handful of mustard from the house of a lady who has lost her son

14. Kisa Gotami kept asking for medicine for her dead son as.....

- the son was about to die
- she was not ready to accept the truth of her son's death.
- there was a medicine that could cure death.
- she thought she could get medicine that would cure her son.

15. Kisa Gotami thought she was selfish as.....

- she was thinking only about her loss
- she was not ready to leave her son.
- she thought her son's death is more aggravating than anybody else's.
- she wanted to have the medicine all for herself

16. People won't get.....from weeping and grieving

- happiness
- wealth
- contentment
- peace of mind

17. Both young and adult can be victim of \_\_\_\_\_

- torture
- grief
- loneliness
- death

18. Kisa Gotami became weary and hopeless because\_\_\_\_\_

- the lights were flickering.
- nobody gave her the mustard seed she needs.
- she realised what was asked to get to cure her son is unattainable.
- it was too late when she was finished searching for the cure.

19. Kisa Gotami saw..... after losing all hope of getting the medicine to cure her son

- Buddha waiting to receive her .
- lights flickering and extinguishing.
- The lights burning continuously

d. Buddha waiting to get the mustard seeds

20. The terms of the world are.....

- a. the world is afflicted with death and decay.
- b. wealth is nothing compared to life.
- c. nobody will be able to get over grief.
- d. love makes people suffer.

## **Extract Based Questions**

### **Question 1**

Kisa Gotami became weary and hopeless, and sat down at the wayside watching the lights of the city, as they flickered up and were extinguished again. At last the darkness of the night reigned everywhere. And she considered the fate of men, that their lives flicker up and are extinguished again. And she thought to herself, "How selfish am I in my grief! Death is common to all; yet in this valley of desolation there is a path that leads him to immortality who has surrendered all selfishness."

21. Kisa Gotami thinks that she is selfish in her grief because.....

- a. she didn't realise that death was common to all and cared about her grief alone.
- b. she wanted the lights to burn all-night.
- c. she wanted to become immortal.
- d. it was dark and she wanted to go through the valley.

22. Pick out the incorrect statements with regard to the extract.

- a. the lights of the city gave her the hope that man is immortal
- b. the lights flickered and extinguished reflecting the fate of men.
- c. she was tired after looking for a house ,where death has not happened
- d. no one can escape death by virtue of his/her birth

23. Kisa developed the understanding that.....

- a. there will be a death every time the city lights extinguish
- b. life is a full of happiness and devoid of pain
- c. death is common to all and that she was selfish in her grief
- d. darkness will not reign when lights continue burning

24. Pick out the statement/statements that express Fact and opinion.

1 Death is common to all

2 Kisa Gotami should have understood that no one can escape death

3 Like lights flickering and getting extinguished, men's lives also glow and end in death.

4 Kisa Gotami should not have shared her grief with others

- a F -1,2 O- 4
- b F -1, 3 O-2, 4
- c F-1 O-2, 3, 4
- d F- 3, 2 O- 1, 4

25. The word that is not a synonym for desolation 'is.....

- a. Wildness
- b. isolation
- c. solitude
- d. gratitude

## Question 2

The Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares, most holy of the dipping places on the River Ganges; that sermon has been preserved and is given here. It reflects the Buddha's wisdom about one inscrutable kind of suffering.

26. The first sermon of Buddha is about.....

- a. how one can attain enlightenment
- b. about enjoying life as it is short.
- c. about a kind of suffering that is difficult to be understood
- d. how a person can attain immortality.

27. Pick out a word from the extract which means 'impossible to understand'?

- a. Reflects
- b. Inscrutable
- c. Wisdom
- d. Preached

28. Pick out the option which cannot be considered as a sermon

- a. We get into many difficulties, dissatisfaction with life and stunted spiritual growth the moment we deliberately go against the master's will.
- b. In a life of uncertainty, we are encouraged as we walk by faith.
- c. Reading maketh a full man, conference a ready man and writing an exact man
- d. We can achieve liberation from suffering through detachment

29. The statement that does use the word reflect as used in the passage is

- a. She paused to reflect on what she had achieved
- b. I often reflect on my school days
- c. She raised her bracelet to the light to watch the colours reflect off
- d. You have to reflect on what he said

30. The word that can replace the word preserve in the passage is .....

- a. conserved
- b. rendered.
- c. delivered.
- d. detached

### Question 3

At about the age of twenty-five, the Prince, heretofore shielded from the sufferings of the world, while out hunting chanced upon a sick man, then an aged man, then a funeral procession, and finally a monk begging for alms. These sights so moved him that he at once went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows he had witnessed.

31. The statement /statements that is /are incorrect with regard to the life of Buddha

is.....

- 1. Immediately after schooling he went to seek enlightenment under the Bodhi tree
- 2. He was moved by the sufferings of people and went out to seek enlightenment.
- 3. He was not satisfied with the knowledge he had and decided to seek enlightenment.
- 4. He was not aware of the sufferings of the world as he was kept away from them and lead a comfortable life till old age

- a. 1,2 and 3
- b. 1 and 3
- c. 1 , 3 and 4
- d. 2 and 4

32. The sights that Buddha witnessed showed.....

- a. the prosperous and comfortable life of the people
- b. the negligent attitude of the people
- c. the pain, sufferings and hardships of the people

d. the sadness that reigned in the life of old people

33. The emoticon/emoticons that does not reflect Buddha's state of mind on seeing the sufferings around him is/are.....



a. 1,2 and 4

b. 2 and 3

c. Only 4

d. 1,2 and 4

34. Choose the quote/quotes that do not reflect the sentiments in the lesson.

1. "There is an ancient tribal proverb I once heard in India. It says that before we can see properly we must first shed our tears to clear the way." — Libba Bray, [The Sweet Far Thing](#)
2. "We are healed of a suffering only by experiencing it to the full." — Marcel Proust
3. "The total amount of suffering per year in the natural world is beyond all decent contemplation. — Betty Smith, [A Tree Grows in Brooklyn](#)
4. "Sometimes we can feel like we are not good enough, but it is important to remember that we have nothing to prove others. Love and respect yourself each and every day." — [Lisa Lieberman-Wang](#)

**a. 1 and 4**

**b. 1 and 3**

**c. 2 and 4**

**d. only 4**

35. The word in the extract which means 'a state of high spiritual knowledge is .....

a. Procession

b. Enlightenment

c. Shielded

d. Witnessed

## Question 4

Poor Kisa Gotami now went from house to house, and the people pitied her and said, “Here is mustard seed; take it!” But when she asked, “Did a son or daughter, a father or mother, die in your family?” they answered her, “Alas! the living are few, but the dead are many. Do not remind us of our deepest grief.” And there was no house but some beloved one had died in it.

36. “Do not remind us of our deepest grief.” The tone of the speaker is.....

- a. disillusioned
- b. sceptical
- c. ironic
- d. sarcastic

37. The word that represents the correct understanding of ‘poor’ in the above context is.....

- a. in need of money
- b. weak
- c. unfortunate
- d. inferior

38. Pick the option that explains ‘..the living are few, but the dead are many’.

- a. The death rate in the city of Benares is high.
- b. Highlights the holy status of Benares where many people wish to breathe their last.
- c. Speaks of the number of children who had died in the village due to natural disasters
- d. Everyone had experienced the loss of many of their loved ones ,and the numbers were more than that of the living

39. The people do not want to be reminded of their deepest grief as.....

- 1. they had forgotten their loved ones who had died and didn’t want to think of them again.
- 2. they wanted to forget the sufferings and enjoy life
- 3. the loss of dear ones to death is an unforgettable pain that one has to live with.
- 4. time heals the pain of losing beloved ones.

- a. Both 1 & b2are valid
- b Only 3 is valid
- c. Both 3 & 4are valid
- d.1,2 and 3 are valid

40. Sakyamuni asked Kisa Gotami to collect mustard seeds for the medicine.....

- a. as he wanted to make her realise that death is inevitable, and it can happen to anyone at any time.
- b. As mustard seeds have medicinal properties that can cure death.
- c. as it would make her forget about her grief.
- d. as it had great healing powers

## Question 5

“Not from weeping or from grieving will anyone obtain peace of mind; on the contrary, his pain will be the greater and his body will suffer. He will make himself sick and pale, yet the dead are not saved by his lamentation. He who seeks peace should draw out the arrow of lamentation, and complaint, and grief. He who has drawn out the arrow and has become composed will obtain peace of mind; he who has overcome all sorrow will become free from sorrow, and be blessed.”

41. The ‘he’ mentioned here in the above extract is.....

- a. anyone who has faced the loss of their dear ones.
- b. One who is in pain due to injury.
- c. the person who has peace of mind.
- d. anybody who is in his death bed.

42. According to the Buddha, peace of mind is attained by those who

- a. renounce worldly life like the Buddha
- b. take out the arrow and become stronger
- c. grieve, suffer and then go out to seek enlightenment
- d. recognise the terms of life and free themselves from sorrow

43. The statement that is incorrect with reference to the extract is.....

- a. Pain and grief are unavoidable hence one must learn to overcome it.
- b. the inevitability of death makes grieving futile.
- c. by meditating one can get rid of all the sufferings, become immortal and lead a happy life
- d. a person who overcomes sorrow can free himself of sorrow.

44. The sentence that does not use the phrase ‘on the contrary’ correctly is.....

- a. I thought he was busy, but on the contrary he was idle.
- b. He seems cheery but, on the contrary, he is very happy.
- c. I thought it was going to clear up. On the contrary, it began to rain.

d. He is not rich. On the contrary, he is deep in debt.

45. The word that can replace the word grief in the above extract is.....

- anguish
- desire
- happiness
- perseverance

**Answer Key**

Very Short Answer Questions	Qn. No	Answer Choice	Extract Based Questions 1	Qn. No	Answer Choice
	1	A		21	a
	2	B		22	a
	3	C		23	c
	4	D		24	b
	5	D		25	d
	6	C		26	c
	7	B		27	b
	8	A		28	c
	9	B		29	c
	10	B		30	a
	11	C		31	c
	12	D		32	c
	13	C		33	c
	14	B		34	d
	15	A		35	b
	16	D	Extract Based Questions 2	36	a
	17	D		37	c
	18	C		38	d
	19	B		39	b
	20	A		40	a
	Extract Based Questions 3	Extract Based Questions 4	Extract Based Questions 5	41	a
				42	d
				43	c
				44	b
				45	a

**ASSERTION/REASONING QUESTIONS**

46.

1. Siddhartha went out into the world to seek enlightenment
2. He was moved by the sufferings of people around him.

- (1) is the result of (2).
- (1) is the reason for (2).

C. (1) is independent of (2).

D. (1) contradicts (2).

47

1. The Buddha preached his first Sermon at the city of Benaras.
2. His sermon has been preserved and it reflects Buddha's wisdom.
  - A. (1) is the result of (2).
  - B. (1) is the reason for (2).
  - C. (1) is independent of (2).
  - D. (1) contradicts (2).

48

1. Kisa Gotami became weary and hopeless.
2. She could not find a house where no beloved had died.
  - A. (1) is the result of (2).
  - B. (1) is the reason for (2).
  - C. (1) is independent of (2).
  - D. (1) contradicts (2)

49

1. A father cannot save his son, nor kinsmen their relations.
2. Death is common to all. There is no means by which those that have been born can avoid dying
  - A. (1) is the result of (2).
  - B. (1) is the reason for (2).
  - C. (1) is independent of (2).
  - D. (1) contradicts (2)

50

1. The lights of the city flickered up and were extinguished again.
2. In the valley of desolation there is a path that leads to immortality.
  - A. (1) is the result of (2).
  - B. (1) is the reason for (2).
  - C. (1) is independent of (2).
  - D. (1) contradicts (2)

ANSWER KEY

46.	A
47	C
48	A

49	A
50	C

## SAQ S (2 MARKS AND 3 MARKS QUESTIONS)

1. Who was Gautama Buddha? When and where was he born?

Ans. Gautama Buddha was a Prince who was named Siddhartha Gautama by his parents. He was born in 563 B.C. in North India. He had been shielded from the sufferings of the world.

2. Why did Prince Siddhartha leave the palace and become a monk?

Ans. While going out for hunting Prince Siddhartha saw a sick man, an aged man and then a funeral procession. Then he saw a beggar begging for alms. These sights mourned him very much. He realised that the world is full of sorrows. He thus turned into a monk.

3. What is a sermon? Is it different from a lecture or a talk?

Ans: A sermon is a spoken or written address on a religious or moral subject. It is a serious talk. It is different from a lecture or a talk. It is because a lecture or a talk can be on anything. A sermon has to be on religion or a moral subject.

4. What did the Buddha do after he had attained enlightenment?

Ans: When Buddha attained enlightenment, he started preaching and telling people about life and its meaning. He spread his preaching far and wide. He shared his knowledge with people through his teachings.

5. Why was Kisa Gotami sad? What did she do in her hour of grief?

Ans. Kisa Gotami was sad because her only son had died. In her hour of grief, she went from house to house in search of a medicine to cure him. She had become selfish in wanting her son back.

6. What did her neighbours think about Kisa Gotami?

Ans. Kisa Gotami's only son had died. She was overwhelmed with grief. She carried the dead child to all her neighbours. She asked them for medicine to cure her son. The neighbours thought she had lost her senses. A dead child could never be cured.

7. Why did Kisa go to Gautama Buddha?

Ans: One of the neighbours advised Kisa Gotami to go to Buddha who could have given her some lifesaving medicine for her son.

8.What did Buddha ask the lady to do?

Ans. Buddha asked the lady to bring a handful of mustard-seeds. But these must be taken from a house where no one had ever lost a child, husband or a friend. Then he would be able to help her.

9. How did the Buddha teach Kisa Gotami the truth of life?

Ans. Buddha changed Kisa's thinking with the help of a simple act—asking her to procure a handful of mustard seeds from that house where none had died. She could not understand it. But, gradually she understood that death is inevitable.

10.Where did Buddha preach his first sermon?

Ans. Gautama Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares, which is regarded as the most holy of the dipping places on the river Ganges.

11.How is the city of Benares important??

Ans. Benares is a sacred city of the Hindus as the river Ganga flows through it. Gautama Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares. It was about accepting death as an inseparable part of life and not grieving unduly over it.

12. What is the moral of the lesson,’ The Sermon at Benares’?

Ans: The moral of the lesson is that one should understand that human beings are mortal and no one can escape death. People must understand that thinking about bound situations will increase one's stress and lead to sorrow. So, our primary focus should be on neglecting sorrows and focusing on things that make us happy.

13.What were the sights that moved and shocked Gautama?

Ans. Prince Gautama had been deliberately shielded from all the sufferings of the world. One day he chanced upon a sick man, then an aged man and then a funeral procession. Finally, he saw a monk begging for alms. These sights moved him. He went out into the world to seek the solution of all these sufferings. He wanted to seek enlightenment.

14.What did the Buddha preach to the people?

Ans: Buddha said that death is common to all mortals. You cannot avoid it. No amount of Weeping and lamenting can bring back a dead. So wise men don't grieve. Weeping and lamenting rather spoil one's health. To overcome sorrow, become free of sorrow.

15. According to Kisa Gotami what is the greatest grief of life?

Ans. According to Kisa Gotami, the greatest grief in life is the death of one's loved ones and one's inability to stop them from dying. She had tried in vain to revive her son. Finding her so miserable the Buddha thought of a way to teach her to stop grieving. She eventually understood the lesson that Buddha wanted to convey-death should be accepted as it is inevitable.

16. How did Kisa Gotami realise that life and death is a process?

Ans: Kisa Gotami went from house to house to bring a handful of mustard seeds but was unable to find one house where nobody died. She sat down by the roadside and saw the lights of city flickering and extinguishing. Thus she realised that the human life is similar to the lights.

17. How did the Buddha teach Kisa Gotami the truth of life and death?

Ans. Kisa Gotami had lost her son. The Buddha told her to bring mustard seeds from the house where there had been no deaths. When she could not fulfil this condition she understood that death is the ultimate truth. All creatures that are born must die one day. This is what Buddha wanted her to understand. Finally the grieving mother accepted the death of her beloved son.

18. How did Siddhartha Gautama get enlightenment? Why did he name the peepal tree as the Bodhi tree?

Ans. Gautama wanted a final solution for the sufferings and pains that afflicted the people of the world. He wandered for seven years for seeking enlightenment. Finally, he sat down under a peepal tree. He vowed to stay there until enlightenment came. Enlightened after seven days, he renamed the peepal tree. It was named as the Bodhi Tree or Tree of Wisdom.

19. What did Buddha say about death and suffering ?

Ans: After enlightenment, Buddha started to spread his teachings about life, truth and the likes of it. He told that death and suffering are the part and parcel of life. None can avoid this truth. Whoever has born, will die one day. In the hour of grief, one must remain calm and composed so that grief doesn't overcome one. Only wise accept the truth. People should not get distressed with pain, suffering and death.

20. Can grieving and lamentation avoid death and decay in this world? What did the Buddha say in this regard?

Ans. This world is afflicted with death and decay. Therefore, the wise don't grieve. No one will ever get peace of mind by weeping or grieving. Weeping or grieving only makes a person sick and pale. Only the person who has overcome all sorrows will be free from sorrow. He will then be blessed.

.....

## **LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 MARKS)**

1. Personal losses are a part and parcel of life. Instead of wailing on them, we should move on in life. This message of Gautama Buddha has become more relevant in this pandemic situation. Do you agree? Why /why not?

Answer:

Yes, I agree with the message that Gautama Buddha has given about life. The prevailing pandemic has made a huge impact on all of us. In the modern times, people have a lot to explore and move with the world at the same pace. If people don't understand the practicality of life, they will be under stress which would in turn will affect their personal and professional lives dearly. People need to understand that everyone who is born to this planet will have to leave it one day. There is no use being sad or crying over the loss. People should accept the reality of loss, remain calm and composed in such situations. They should face the truth and move on in life resolutely.

2. Life is full of trials and tribulations. Kisa Gotami also passes through a period of grief in her life. How does she behave in those circumstances?

Answer:

Kisa Gotami became extremely sad after the death of her only child. She carried her dead child to her neighbours in order to get medicine to bring him back to life. Her neighbours concluded that she had gone insane as she was unable to accept the reality. Seeing her agony someone suggested her to meet Gautama Buddha. When she met Gautama Buddha asked her to collect mustard seeds from a house where no one has ever died. She went from one house to another but was unable to find a single house in the village where no one has died. This way she realised that death is a part of life and anyone who is born is bound to die one day. Thus, Buddha changed her understanding of death by this exercise. could come to terms with the truth.

3. What is the nature of the life of the human beings according to the Buddha?

Answer:

According to Buddha, "The life of mortals in this world is troubled and brief and combined with pain. For there is not any means by which those that have been born can avoid dying; after reaching old age there is death; of such a nature are living beings. As ripe fruits are early in danger of falling, so mortals when born are always in danger of death. As all earthen vessels made by the potter end in being broken, so is the life of mortals. Both young and adult, both those who are fools and those who are wise, all fall into the power of death; all are subject to death."

4. How did Gautam Buddha get enlightenment? Explain with reference to the story.

Answer:

At about the age of twenty-five, Siddhartha went for hunting. He happened to see a sick man, an aged man, a funeral procession and finally a monk begging for alms. These sights administered a shock for him as he was insulated from the sufferings of the world. He renounced worldly pleasures and went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows he had witnessed.

Siddhartha wandered for seven years pursuing enlightenment and finally sat down under a peepal tree. On the seventh day, he received enlightenment and renamed the tree as 'Bodhi Tree'. He became known as the Buddha (the Awakened or the Enlightened) and began to teach and to share his new understandings.

Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares, regarded as the spiritual capital of India and one of the world's oldest continually inhabited cities

5. "The World is afflicted with death and decay, therefore the wise do not grieve, knowing the terms of the world". Express your view with reference to the story "The Sermon at Benares".

Answer:

According to Gautama Buddha, the world is afflicted with sufferings, disease or pain, death and decay. Neither from weeping nor from grieving will anyone obtain peace of mind; on the contrary, his pain will be the greater and his body will suffer. He will make himself sick and pale, yet the dead are not saved by his lamentation. We have to accept personal loss as a reality and pursue our journey of life with positive thoughts. Nothing is constant in the world, including human life. Keeping eyes shut can't diminish the reality in front of us. Those who have overcome all sorrows will become free from sorrow, and be blessed.

## THE PROPOSAL

Anton Chekov

### INTRODUCTION

Anton Chekov (1860-1904) was a famous writer. He is chiefly known for his short stories.

This play 'The Proposal' is a romantic story of a man named Ivan Lomov. He is a landowner and often gets money from Chubukov's another landowner. Chubukov has a daughter named Natalya. Lomov comes to Chubukov with a marriage proposal for his daughter Natalya.

### GIST

'The Proposal' is a one-act play. Actually, it is a farce written by Anton Chekhov in 1888-89. The play is about the tendency of wealthy families to seek matrimonial ties. The real purpose is to increase their estates and landed properties. Ivan Vassilevitch Lomov was a wealthy neighbour of another wealthy farmer Stepan Stepanovitch Chubukov. Lomov comes to seek the hand of Chubukov's twenty-five-year-old daughter, Natalya. Lomov, Chubukov and Natalya—all three are quarrelsome people. They quarrel over petty issues. Each one of them has a claim over a particular piece of land. They also quarrel over their dogs. Amidst this quarrelling, they completely forget the real issue — the marriage proposal. But good sense prevails in the end. Economic good sense ensures that the proposal is made. Chubukov doesn't want to miss the opportunity. He puts his daughter's hand into Lomov's hands. He doesn't

waste any time and blesses them. However, old habits die hard. The newly married couple start their married life with a fresh quarrel.

## DETAILED SUMMARY

When the play begins, we see that Lomov comes to meet Chubukov at his house. Chubukov who is a farmer welcomes Lomov. He asks him why he is wearing formal clothes and whether he is going to attend a function. Lomov replies that he is not going anywhere; he has come only to meet him. Lomov appears excited and perturbed. He calms himself down and begins to tell him the purpose of his visit. He tells him that he came to him many times in the past also for his help but he did not help him. Before telling the purpose of his visit. Lomov is excited once again. Chubukov thinks that perhaps he has come to ask for a loan. He makes up his mind not to help him in any way. Lomov once again begins to tell Chubukov about the purpose of his visit. But he once again becomes excited. He talks about himself in exaggerated terms. Chubukov asks him not to beat about the bush and to talk about his purpose of coming. Lomov gathers courage and tells him that he has come to ask for his daughter Natalya's hand in marriage. On hearing this Chubukov becomes very happy, he goes in to call Natalya. But before this Lomov asks him whether Natalya would give her permission for this. Chubukov replies that she will readily accept a match like him. Lomov is left alone in the room. His body is trembling with excitement. He thinks about his present life. He wants to settle the question of his marriage at once. He thinks that now he should not delay. He thinks about Natalya. She is a skilled house-keeper. She is educated and is not bad to look at. At this age, he should not expect a better girl than her. Now he is thirty-five years old. Now he should lead a regulated life. He is suffering from serious diseases like palpitation, excitement and insomnia. Because of these reasons, he should marry. Just then Natalya comes in. Her father has not told her that Lomov has come to meet her. He only told her that a customer had come. Even then she welcomes Lomov. Before Lomov can speak, she starts speaking. When she mentions his beautiful dress, he is again excited. Before he can talk about his marriage to her, he starts trembling. Natalya encourages him and he recovers. He says that he will tell her everything in brief. Even then he cannot talk in a straight-forward manner. He beats about the bush. He tells her that for the last many decades their families have had good relations. Their estates are also adjoining. His Oxen Meadows touch their Birchwoods. Natalya protests against this. She says that the Oxen Meadows belong to her. They lay their claims to it. They start quarrelling about the ownership of the Oxen Meadows. They shout loudly at each other. They do not calm down in any way. Chubukov comes in and finds them both quarrelling. He is greatly surprised. But when he finds that they are quarrelling about the ownership of the Oxen Meadows. He also

becomes angry. Instead of calming them down, he also starts quarrelling. He claims to be the owner of Oxen Meadows. He insults not only Lomov but also his family members. Lomov becomes more excited. He uses insulting words for Chubukov, Natalya and their family members. Lomov's palpitation increases and he becomes very perturbed. He goes out of the room. Chubukov says how the foolish Lomov dared to bring a proposal for Natalya's marriage. When Natalya hears this, she is deeply shocked. She is almost unconscious. She starts weeping and asks her father to bring him back. Chubukov feels sad. He says that it is the biggest misfortune to be the father of a girl. He goes out to call Lomov. Lomov again enters the room. Natalya thinks that she will not annoy him this time. She tries to please him. She says that the Meadows belong to him. She tries to change the topic so that he could propose to her. But he is still not all right. He is feeling disturbed. He does not come to the point. Lomov starts praising the qualities of his dog Guess, which he has purchased for 125 roubles. But Natalya says that her dog Squeezor which she purchased for 85 roubles is much better than Lomov's dog Guess. Both of them praise the qualities of their dogs. Now they start quarrelling on this topic. They again start shouting at each other. In the meantime, Chubukov comes. Instead of putting an end to their quarrel, he also starts quarrelling. In this dispute. Lomov's condition deteriorates and he falls on the chair, unconscious. Both the father and the daughter think that he has died. Natalya starts lamenting that her chance of getting married has gone. After sometime. Lomov comes to his senses. Chubukov tells Lomov that Natalya is willing for marriage. So he should marry her. Natalya expresses her willingness. Chubukov does not want to lose even a moment and joins their hands. He asks them to kiss each other. But soon, they start quarrelling again. They start debating the qualities of their respective dogs. Chubukov tries to calm them down. With this, the play comes to an end.

### **Multiple Choice Questions:(1 Marks)**

1. Why does Lomov call on Chubukovs?
  - (a) To talk about some business matters
  - (b) Just a friendly visit
  - (c) To borrow money from Chubukov
  - (d) To propose to Natalya
2. What does Lomov suffer from?
  - (a) Epilepsy
  - (b) Palpitations
  - (c) Back ache
  - (d) Bronchitis

3. What happens to Lomov when he is in an excited state?
  - (a) He starts running
  - (b) He speaks a lot
  - (c) His lips start trembling
  - (d) None of these
4. How much are the Oxen meadows worth according to Natalya?
  - (a) 100 roubles
  - (b) 200 roubles
  - (c) 300 roubles
  - (d) 500 roubles
5. What had Natalya been doing when Lomov called on her?
  - (a) Shelling peas for drying
  - (b) Washing clothes
  - (c) Cleaning the house
  - (d) Cooking food
6. How did Natalya react when her father told that Lomov was there to propose her?
  - (a) She gets angry
  - (b) She sends her father to get him
  - (c) She is amazed
  - (d) Both b and c
7. Why was Natalya arguing about the land?
  - (a) She can't stand unfairness
  - (b) It was worth a lot
  - (c) She was jealous of Lomov
  - (d) All of the above
8. "And it is impossible for me not to marry." Why does Lomov say so?
  - (a) He is 35 already
  - (b) He suffers from palpitations
  - (c) He has troubled sleep
  - (d) All of the above.
9. What does the expression 'spit it out' mean?
  - (a) Just take it
  - (b) Just say it
  - (c) Just leave it
  - (d) Just listen to.

10. After hearing Lomov's proposal, Chubukov is 'Off his balance' with ----- .

- (a) Joy
- (b) Anger
- (c) Hatred
- (d) Disgust

11. To prove their ownership Natalya decided to send ----- to that land.

- (a) Grass Cutters
- (b) Brick makers
- (c) Lawyer
- (d) Government Officials

12. Which of the following descriptions does not go with Natalya?

- (a) Greedy
- (b) Quarrelsome
- (c) Peace loving
- (d) Rigid

13. Which of the following best describes Lomov?

- (a) Generous
- (b) Argumentative
- (c) Considerate
- (d) Honest

14. Who is squeezed between Lomov and Natalya emotionally?

- (a) Natalya's Aunt
- (b) Natalya's brother
- (c) Natalya's mother
- (d) Natalya's father

15. Why did Chubukov think it was a curse to be a father of a grown up daughter?

- (a) He had to go and call the man they had just shun out.
- (b) He had to go and call the man who had just insulted them
- (c) He had to go and call the man who had just shouted at them
- (d) All the above

16. In the fight among the characters in the play 'The Proposal', who is accused as a drunkard and by whom?

- (a) Lomov's grandfather is accused by Chubukov.
- (b) Chubukov's father is accused by Lomov.
- (c) Chubukov's grandfather is accused by Lomov.

(d) Lomov's father is accused by Chubukov.

17. Which of the following is not a good point found by Chubukov in 'Guess'?

- (a) He is purebred
- (b) He has a fairly brushy coat
- (c) He is firm in his feet
- (d) He has well sprung ribs

18. In the play 'The Proposal' whose peasants are said to have baked bricks?

- (a) The peasants of Chubukov
- (b) The peasants of Chubukov's grandfather
- (c) The peasants of Lomov's father
- (d) The peasants of Lomov's grandfather

19. What are the defects in 'Guess' as pointed out by Chubukov?

- (a) He is old and short in the muzzle
- (b) He is old and obese
- (c) He is lame and not good at hunting
- (d) He barks excessively

20. According to Chubukov, Lomov's younger aunt eloped with -----.

- (a) A Singer
- (b) A Doctor
- (c) A Carpenter
- (d) An Architect

### **Answers**

### **Answers**

1. (d) To propose to Natalya
2. (b) Palpitations
3. (c) His lips start trembling
4. (c) 300 roubles
5. (a) Shelling peas for drying
6. Both (b) and (c)
7. (a) She can't stand unfairness

8. (d) All of the above
9. (b) Just say it
10. (a) Joy
11. (a) Grass Cutters
12. (c) Peace loving
13. (b) Argumentative
14. (d) Natalya's father
15. (d) All of the above
  
16. (a) Lomov's grandfather is accused of Chubukov
  
17. (b) He has a fairly brushy coat
  
18. (b) The peasants of Chubukov's grandfather
  
19. (a) He is old and short in the muzzle
  
20. (d) An architect

### **Short Answer Questions: 2 marks**

#### **Q1) What happens to Lomov when he is in an excited state?**

ANS: When Lomov is in an excited state his heart beat increases, lips tremble and there is a twitch in his right eyebrow. When he goes to sleep in such a state something pulls him from his left side and he jumps like a lunatic.

#### **Q2) Why does Chubukov suspect Lomov when he comes to his house?**

ANS: When Chubukov sees Lomov, he suspects that he must have come to borrow money from him. Chubukov is not at all sincere in saying "And I've always loved you, my angel as if you were my own son." But in the entire play Chubukov and Lomov are seen fighting over the property or the dogs.

#### **Q3) Why does Lomov say that Chubukov is not a good neighbour but a land-grabber ?**

ANS: Lomov has his reasons to think that Chubukov is not a good neighbour but a land-grabber. His aunt's grandmother gave the Meadows for 'temporary' and free use to Chubukov's grandfather's peasants. He doesn't intend to give up his claim over the Meadows. Good neighbours don't behave like this. Only land-grabbers behave in this fashion.

**Q4) What did Natalya say about Guess?**

ANS: Natalya said that Squeezer was superior to Guess - Lomov's dog. Lomov said that his dog Guess was better than Squeezer. Natalya believed that Guess had become old and ought to be shot. She also claimed that Squeezer was a hundred times better than Guess.

**Q5) What is the ailment that Lomov is suffering from?**

ANS: Lomov is hypochondriac and nervous. He thinks he is cold, he has a roaring in his ears, he complains of a weak heart, insomnia, strange aches and palpitation. He also suffers from numbness of limbs. He gets nervous very often. His heart collapses twice. He considers himself weak and helpless, and needs sympathy.

**Q6) Describe Chubukov's reaction when he comes to know about Lomov's purpose of visit.**

ANS: Chubukov is extremely happy and excited to know about Lomov's proposal. He assures him that Natalya would agree to the proposal. He showers his affection on Lomov and sheds a tear out of his own happiness and says that it is his heartfelt desire. He does so because he thinks that Lomov would make a good match for his daughter.

**Q7) Why does Natalya ask her father Chubukov to fetch Lomov in at once? Why does she accuse her father?**

ANS: Natalya asked her father to fetch Lomov at once as she had come to know that Lomov had come to propose to her. She accused Chubukov of driving Lomov out of their home.

**Q8) Why does Lomov wish to propose to Natalya?**

ANS: Lomov wishes to propose to Natalya because he feels she is an excellent housekeeper, not bad looking, and is also well-educated. Moreover, he feels that he is already thirty-five, which is a critical age and he ought to lead a regular and settled life.

**Q9) Which qualities are common in all three characters of the play 'The Proposal'?**

ANS: All the characters in the play are argumentative, full of pride and possessiveness. They are always ready to argue about petty things. They even fought over the breed of dogs.

**Q10) What according to Chubukov is Lomov worth doing?**

ANS: The speaker Chubukov doesn't think that his neighbour Lomov is worth anything. He only knows how to argue with people and interfere with their dogs. He can't be a good hunter at all.

**Short Answer Questions: 3 marks**

**Q1) Who are Lomov and Chubukov and how are they related to each other ?**

ANS: Lomov and Chubukov are landlords. They are neighbours too. According to lomov, he has been coming to Chubukov for help. Chubukov has helped him even earlier. There seems to be a dispute over the ownership of Oxen Meadows. Each one claims that the land belongs to him. Lomov is interested in marrying Chubukov's daughter Natalya and considers her a suitable match for him.

**Q2) Justify the title of the play, 'The Proposal'?**

ANS: The title of the play "The Proposal" is apt. The title justifies the main theme- the marriage of Natalya and Lomov. No doubt, both Lomov and Natalya want to be life partners. However, unnecessary quarrels over Oxen Meadows and their dogs Squeezers and Guess temporarily spoil their game. The message is very clear. The main issue must not be clouded and lost sight of by indulging in unnecessary and avoidable quarrels.

**Q3) What do you learn about Natalya from the play, The Proposal?**

ANS: Natalya is the only daughter of the landowner Chubukov. She was very possessive about her land and was very determined not to part with it. She was a short-tempered lady who used to quarrel with everyone very often. She always pinpointed the amount of help she had offered to her neighbours. Though well educated, she did not use her education wisely and thoughtfully.

**Q4) Describe the first fight between Lomov and Natalya.**

ANS: Although Lomov had come to Chubukov's house to propose his daughter Natalya, he started fighting with her over a small piece of land. This land adjoined her land and his Oxen Meadows touched her Birch woods. Natalya told Lomov that Oxen Meadows belonged to her, but Lomov claimed that the Oxen Meadows are his. Lomov tried to convince Natalya by telling her that his aunt's grandmother gave the meadows for the temporary and free use to Chubukov's grandfather's peasants. They did not demand money for it for a long time, so the Chubukov's misunderstood that the meadows belonged to them. While Chubukov insisted that yelling could not prove anything because everyone knows that meadows belonged to Chubukov's since last three hundred years. Both threatened each other.

**Q5) “The way Chubukov, Natalya and Lomov fought over pretty issues is against the behaviour and mannerisms of good neighbours.” Comment. What would you have done to resolve this issue if you were in place of Chubukov?**

ANS :Lomov and Chubukovs were neighbours. Lomov came to Chubukov's house to propose Natalya. But instead of proposing, they started fighting over petty issues like Oxen meadows and quality of dogs. This is not the quality of good neighbours. Neighbours should live like friends. There should be a positive relationship between the two neighbours. There should be understanding and patience among neighbours, The fight between Lomov and Chubukovs could have been avoided, if handled carefully. The issue of meadows could be solved calmly peacefully by a good conversation. There must have been some documents showing the ownership of the meadows or both parties could be convinced by making them understand that if they got married, the meadows will belong to both of them. Similarly, the issues of dog could be solved by discussing the positive features of the dogs instead of counting the negative points of each other's dogs.

### **VALUE BASED QUESTIONS :5 Marks**

**Q6) Bring out the humorous elements in the one-act play, ‘The Proposal’.**

ANS:One can see several humorous elements in Anton Chekov's play ‘The Proposal’ where the characters act in a silly manner over petty issues yet the play ends on a happy note. Lomov comes to the house of Chubukov with the intention of proposing Natalya, his daughter. But he cannot talk in a straight-forward manner. He beats about the bush. She starts quarrelling with her over a piece of land. When he comes back, he quarrels about the superiority of his dog. She immediately looks to her father to induce them to war, until Natalya discovers that he had come with the purpose of proposing her. Chubukov is also a humorous character. He knows

that Lomov has come to ask for his daughter's marriage, even then he quarrels with him. We laugh at the words used by them and their behaviour. The sudden marriage of Lomov and Natalya creates laughter. Chubukov puts his daughter's hand in Lomov's in a foolish manner. Lomov is a comic character. His complaints about his poor health provoke laughter. Thus, the play gives us a lot of laughter.

**Q7) Write a brief character sketch of Lomov.**

ANS:Lomov was a middle aged man of thirty five. He suffered from palpitations and sleeplessness. So, he was desperate to settle down in life, and lead a quiet and normal life. Despite his ailments, Lomov was a rich and prosperous farmer. This makes Chubukov secretly wish him to marry his daughter Natalya. As Lomov was desperate to have a life partner he decided to propose and marry Natalya. Lomov was however hesitant to ask for her hand from Chubukov. This made him beat about the bush, argue with Natalya and leave without proposing. Thus we can find that Lomov's conditions overpower the other traits he has. He is an eligible, assertive, rich bachelor, who will be liked by any girl. However, we also know that he is nervous, lacks confidence and is prone to talk in a long-winded manner.

**Q8) Give a brief character sketch of Natalya Stepanova.**

ANS:Natalya was the only daughter of Stephan Stepanovich Chubukov.. She was a good housekeeper, not bad to look at and educated, that was why Lomov wanted to marry her. She could be a good wife to him. Natalya wishes that somebody should love her and propose to her. Her father calls her 'a love-sick cat'.She secretly loved Lomov. She became hysterical when she came to know that Lomov had come to propose to her. She asked her father to call him back. To please Lomov, she asked him to forgive her and agreed to his ownership of the Oxen Meadows. She was greedy and short-sighted. She got the whole field of hay cut. She was also very inquisitive and wanted to know why Lomov was dressed up formally. She was touchy and short-tempered and fell into contradiction and argument on two occasions – Once over the ownership of Oxen Meadows and second time over the superiority of her dog Squeezer. She is as rigid as Lomov. She is not ready to give up even after getting ready to marry him.

**Q9) Based on your understanding of the play 'The Proposal' how do you think good relationship can be maintained? Why in today's time we see so many people going away from each other?**

ANS: The play 'The Proposal' teaches us how anger and arguments can easily ruin a relationship. Thus, to maintain a good relationship, it is important to have control over your anger. Having arguments over unimportant or small issues is extremely harmful and a waste of time. If someone commits a mistake, one should be ready to forgive and forget rather than being angry and arguing with the person endlessly. In the play the way all the characters lost their temper shows that anger can easily affect a relationship. None of them were ready to forgive and forget. All of them were too self-centric. They never tried to be courteous in their speech nor tried to understand the feelings of others. In today's world too people try to find only the negatives in others and often forget to see and accept the positive qualities. Hence it is becoming extremely difficult to maintain a good and cordial relationship with others.

### **Extract Based Questions**

#### **QUESTION 1**

“Natalya is an excellent housekeeper, not bad-looking, well-educated. What more do I want? But I’m getting a noise in my ears from excitement. And it is impossible for me not to marry. In the first place I’m already 35 - a critical age, so to speak. In the second place, I ought to lead a quiet and regular life”

- (i) Who is the speaker of the above line?
- (ii) What does the speaker mean when he says, “What more do I want?”
- (iii) What do the given lines tell us about the speaker?
- (iv) “I’m getting a noise in my ears from excitement”. What does this mean?
- (v) What does a ‘housekeeper’ do?

#### **QUESTION 2**

“Never mind about my people! The Lomovs have all been honourable people, and not one has ever been tried for embezzlement, like your grandfather!”

- (i) Who does the speaker say the above lines to?
- (ii) What does the line tell about the speaker?
- (iii) How does Lomov describe his people?
- (iv) Find the word from the extract which means ‘steal money that you are responsible for’.
- (v) Explain ‘Never mind about my people’.

### QUESTION 3

“I shall try to be brief. You must know, honoured Natalaya Stepanovna, that I have long, since my childhood, in fact had the privilege of knowing your family. My late aunt and her husband, from whom, as you know, I inherited my land, always had the greatest respect for your father and your late mother. The Lomovs and the Chubukovs have always had the most friendly, and I might almost say the most affectionate, regard for each other. And, as you know, my land is a near neighbour of yours. You will remember that my Oxen Meadows touch your birch woods.

- (i) Who is the speaker and who is the listener?
- (ii) What type of relations they had in the past?
- (iii) What is common between the Lomovs and Chubukovs?
- (iv) What is the significance Oxen Meadows here?
- (v) Select the word from the extract which means the same as, ‘special right or advantage’.

### QUESTION 4

“No, you’re simply joking, or making fun of me. What a surprise! We’ve had the land for nearly three hundred years, and then we’re suddenly told that it isn’t ours! Ivan Vassilevitch, I can hardly believe my own ears. These Meadows aren’t worth much to me. They only come to five dessiatins, and are worth perhaps 300 roubles, but I can’t stand unfairness. Say what you will, I can’t stand unfairness.”

- (i) Who is the speaker? Who is being addressed?
- (ii) Which meadow is mentioned here by the speaker?
- (iii) How much are the Meadows worth?
- (iv) What does she find ‘unfair’?
- (v) Pick out the word from the passage that means opposite to ‘gradually’.

### QUESTION 5

“There’s some demon of contradiction in you today, Ivan Vassilevitch. First you pretend that the Meadows are yours; now, that Guess is better than Squeezers. I don’t like people who don’t say what they mean, because you know perfectly well that Squeezers is a hundred times better than your silly Guess. Why do you want to say he isn’t?”

- (i) Name the speaker.
- (ii) What does Natalaya blame Lomov for?
- (iii) What do Natalaya and Lomov first argue about?
- (iv) Who are Guess and Squeezers?
- (v) Pick out the word from the passage that means the same as “opposition”.

## QUESTION 6

You may take it that I know whether I have the right or not. Because, young man, I’m not used to being spoken to in that tone of voice, and so on. I, young man, am twice your age, and ask you to speak to me without agitating yourself, and all that

- (i) Who is the speaker here?
- (ii) What does the speaker claim to have the right to?
- (iii) Who is addressed as 'young man' here?
- (iv) How does the speaker want the other person to talk to him?
- (v) Find out the word from the extract which means the same as 'double'

## Extract Based Questions-Answers

### 1. ANSWERS

- (i) Lomov is the speaker.
- (ii) He means that Natalya is a good match for him.
- (iii) The lines clearly tell that Lomov wants to lead a settled life.
- (iv) This means that Lomov usually gets very excited.
- (v) Housekeeper’s job is to manage shopping, cooking, cleaning etc. in a house or an institution.

### 2. ANSWERS

- (i) Lomov says this Chubukov.
- (ii) The line tells us that Lomov considers his family with great pride
- (iii) Lomov described his people as honourable.
- (iv) Embezzlement

(v) Lomov said this because his family members are never that type as accused by Chubukov

### 3. ANSWERS

- (i) Lomov is the speaker and the listener is Natalya.
- (ii) They had good relations in the past. Both the families had respect and affection for each other.
- (iii) Lomov's Oxen Meadows touch Chubukov's birchwoods.
- (iv) It is about this Oxen Meadows that Lomov and Natalya would quarrel bitterly in the story.
- (v) Privilege.

### 4. ANSWERS

- (i) Natalaya is the speaker. She is speaking to Lomov.
- (ii) Oxen Meadows
- (iii) The Meadows are worth 300 roubles.
- (iv) Lomov's claim that Oxen Meadows belongs to him.
- (v) Suddenly.

### 5. ANSWERS

- (i) Natalya is the speaker.
- (ii) Natalaya blames Lomov for opposing whatever she says.
- (iii) Natalaya and Lomov first argue about the ownership of Oxen Meadows.
- (iv) Guess and Squeezee are the names of their dogs.
- (v) Contradiction.

### 6. ANSWERS

- (i) Chubukov is the speaker here.
- (ii) The speaker claims to have the right to give the Oxen Meadows to the peasants.
- (iii) Lomov is addressed as 'young man' here.
- (iv) The speaker wants Lomov to talk to him without getting agitated.
- (v) Twice

(POEM)

AMANDA

**About the poet.**

Robin McMaugh Klein (born on 28 February 1936) is an Australian author. She started her literary career at the age of sixteen when she published her first short story. In 1981 she was awarded a Literature Board grant for writing. Robin Klein penned more than forty books.

**Summary of the poem in a nutshell**

Amanda is a girl in her early teens or pre-teens. She is constantly nagged by her domineering parents. Their frequent interference to season her as per the norms of the society makes her stoic towards them. She is unperturbed and is dreaming of her isolated world, which she prefers not to share.

**Summary**

Amanda is a little girl who is frequently advised by her parents in a tougher tone what to do and what not to do. She is told not to bite her nails and sit straight.

While her parents are instructing her about the dos and don'ts, Amanda is in her dream world. She is imagining about the calm green sea where she is the lonely mermaid, swimming in the slender currents.

The parent is now asking Amanda whether she has completed her homework and whether she has swiped her room and cleaned her shoes.

In response, she fancies herself as an orphan with illimitable freedom. She is roaming in the streets length and breadth. She feels silence priceless and freedom sweeter.

The parent is worried about the pimples on her face and forbids the child from eating chocolates. As her/his child is ignoring her, the parent instructs Amanda to maintain eye contact when she/he speaks to her.

Amanda thinks that she is Rapunzel, the protagonist in the German fairy tale, the beautiful girl with long golden hair, who was imprisoned by a witch in the tall tower of a castle. In the tale, the Rapunzel lets her long hair down so that the prince who comes to her rescue can climb easily. But Amanda imagines herself as a different Rapunzel, who prefers not to let her long hair down as the arrival of a prince may fragment her lonesome world.

As Amanda is lost in thoughts, her mother/father scolds her again for being silent and gloomy. The parent fears that others may assess that the child is unhappy because of her parents.

### **Structure of the poem**

The poem has twenty-five lines in seven stanzas. The stanzas 1,3,5 and 7 are the instructions of the parent and the even stanzas are the thoughts of the little girl. Almost all the lines of the odd stanzas end with “!” mark, indicating the authoritative and displeased parent and the even stanzas tells about the evasive child who refuses to be the servile of her parents.

## **AMANDA**

### **Central Idea:**

The poet expresses the views of a small girl Amanda about freedom or liberty in life. The protagonist Amanda is a small girl who has certain unwanted habits. She is asked to mend those habits. She seems to live in her own world and feels her freedom getting curtailed by the set of instructions given to her by her elders so she finds solace in the world of imagination. This upsets her parents who call her moody. Amanda’s reaction to the rules and regulations imposed upon her by her parents is very interesting.

Every child wants to enjoy freedom but feels that he or she is controlled and instructed not to do one thing or another. Children have certain habits which are disapproved of by their parents. The parents teach them to mend those habits. This is for their benefit. It is parents who are responsible for the proper upbringing of their child but they should be careful that their nagging should not make the child feel suffocated.

- Childhood is a time of freedom and fantasies- it is a period in which we experience complete freedom. As soon as we reach adolescence, we are expected to abandon such practices and do as we are told. Amanda is a teenager as can be guessed from the acne on her face.
- As Amanda is no longer a small child, her mother expects her to conform and act and behave in a certain way. Girls her age are expected to sit up straight, take care of her appearance and look pleasant. Her mother expects her to be like a role model and goes to the extent of nagging her at all times, scold her and take away her chocolates.
- Amanda wishes to be left alone. She dreams of being a mermaid who drifts along with the water current and loves to be left alone. All her fantasies are in a world that does not

inhabit human beings and their expectations. She wishes to be an orphan just so she can move away from all the nagging and constant scolding. She wants to be Rapunzel but does not wish to be rescued.

- Amanda thinks that the only place where she will not have to bear the burden of the expectations of her mother and the society would only be in her imagination.

### STANZA 1

In the above lines, Amanda is getting instructed, most probably by her parents for biting nails and slouching or sitting lazily with her shoulders bent. The tone of instruction here is not a friendly one and thus fails to make any sense to Amanda. The poet, here, focuses on the aspects related to the upbringing of a child and how parents go to any limit to bring proper sense to their child. Amanda is thus getting trained for the society she is a part of. The pressure of making oneself presentable to the society triumphs over every other behaviour and manners. The last phrase or word ‘Amanda!’ is used with an exclamation mark which shows the irritation and frustration of the parent.

### STANZA 2

It is to be noted that the above lines are given within parenthesis or brackets. These brackets are used to provide more meaning to the phrase. The poet uses them to present the imagination of the little girl and the free-flow of her thoughts. Amanda uses her imagination as an escape point from day-to-day commands of her parents.

Amanda feels suffocated in the real world and thus finds peace in her very own created world where there are no restraints. She imagines herself to be a joyful mermaid sailing without any confines alongside the soft waves of the green sea. This world of Amanda is free and contained in itself and her happiness doesn't require any other human being. For a child, a mermaid is a symbol of freedom and wonder.

### STANZA 3

Amanda is now being asked whether she has finished her homework tidied up her room and cleaned her shoes. This set of instructions marks a shift from the instructions given in Stanza 1. Amanda is now being coached about the things that are related to her surroundings. She is being disciplined for every little thing,

making her lose her freedom. Her innocence is eventually getting lost with the passage of time. The way these instructions are delivered points out the regular nature of these lessons. Her

name being called again with an exclamation mark which shows that the parents seem to be losing their cool and are troubled by her demeanour.

#### STANZA 4

These lines are spoken by Amanda. She dreams of being an orphan who is free to roam in the streets, walk without shoes and make patterns in the dust with her feet. Nobody will scream any advice or instructions to her. This dream of being able to roam freely and doing things as and when she likes it seems golden and sweet to her.

In this stanza, we once again see Amanda's reaction to her mother's harsh words. Amanda withdraws into another imaginary world. The very first line is awfully depressing where Amanda imagines herself to be an orphan, suggesting how much frustrated she is with continuous questioning by her parents, especially her mother. She escapes into her imaginary world where she is barefoot and makes her feet dirtier instead by making designs on the dusty ground with them. She cherishes the silence as well as the freedom to do as she likes in that world of her imagination. Her love for silence is a result of the shouting and yelling by her parents.

#### STANZA 5

The speaker tells Amanda not to eat chocolates. The speaker reminds her about the acne on her face. She tells Amanda to look into the eyes of the speaker when he/she is speaking to her. The set of instructions provided here indicate how essential it is for Amanda to understand the value of external beauty, and steps to be taken to preserve it from a very tender age. Amanda is stopped by her parents from eating a chocolate as that had previously caused her acne. Here, we see how a child is made conscious of a natural experience such as acne. However, Amanda is still lost in her own thoughts and doesn't care enough to look up to her scolding parents. This carelessness on her part further angers her parents and they ask for her attention when she is being scolded. The role of one's appearance in the society is given more significance than the basic values and creativity.

#### STANZA 6

The lines are spoken by Amanda. Here, she hopes to be Rapunzel. But she doesn't wish to have everything that Rapunzel has. She loves the life that Rapunzel has when she locked in her tower, away from the entire humanity. The Rapunzel in the tower which Amanda yearns to be

is care-free, peaceful and perfectly alright in being alone. She does not want to be rescued and will not let her hair down as she wants to stay in the tower forever.

Amanda is still lost in her own dreams she pictures herself to be golden-haired Rapunzel who lives in a castle and has no care in the world. Amanda imagines that the life of Rapunzel must be very peaceful and fantastic in the tower. But she wishes to evade the fate that was meted out to Rapunzel as she is unwilling to let her hair down. Amanda doesn't want her peace to be disturbed anyhow. She seeks a life which is away from any other human form. We can see here how the presence of her parents and their inhuman behaviour has made her against any human connection. Hence, she only wants to live by herself as the presence of another being in her life would require her to act in a certain way. Amanda wants to live as a free and happy person.

### STANZA 7

The speaker asks Amanda to stop sulking. Amanda is moody and sulky and the speaker wants her to turn normal as anyone who would see Amanda would think that the speaker had scolded her. The parents keep instructing Amanda on the do's and don'ts, but Amanda remains lost in her own dreams. The parents believe that Amanda is not reacting because she is annoyed. Amanda's behaviour has made her parents look bad and they are worried about their image. They are concerned about how society will perceive them if their child always remains in a foul mood. They want to prove themselves as responsible parents who manage to balance out what the child wants and what the society expects out of Amanda.

### **Poetic Devices:-**

#### **1. Alliteration:**

- a. Stop that slouching and sit up straight
- b. I thought I told you to clean
- c. Stop that sulking at once, Amanda!

#### **2. Metaphor:**

- a. I am an orphan
- b. Silence is golden
- c. Freedom is sweet
- d. I am Rapunzel

#### **3. Allusion:**

Rapunzel (Taken from German fairy tale)

**4. Rhyme Scheme: aaba ccc**

**SAQ S ( 2 MARKS AND 3 MARK QUESTIONS)**

1. How old do you think Amanda is? How do you know this?

Ans: Amanda's age could be between 10-12 years old. We can guess this because of the reference to mermaid or Rapunzel. These stories are read by children of age group of 10-12 years. Amanda's mother also makes a reference to acne, which appears during adolescence.

2. Why is Amanda getting scolded for having chocolate?

Ans: Amanda is getting scolded for having chocolates as previously it had caused her acne.

3. What can you depict of Amanda's nature?

Ans: Amanda is a moody girl. She is nagged most of the time. She often escapes from reality and goes into an imaginary world.

4. Why does Amanda want to be Rapunzel?

Ans: Amanda wants to be Rapunzel because she wants to live a rare and tranquil life in tower like Rapunzel.

5. What could Amanda do if she were a mermaid?

Ans: The little girl Amanda wants to be a mermaid and the only resident of the beautiful green sea. She thinks that her life will be very relaxing in the sea and she will be taken away with the currents of water.

6. Who do you think is speaking to her?

Ans: One of her parents is speaking to her. Most probably it is her mother. In a traditional household mother is held responsible for the conduct of child.

7. What does the girl yearn for? What does this poem tell you about Amanda?

Ans: A girl like Amanda yearns for freedom and space for herself. She likes to be let alone and does not like to be questioned or nagged at.

8. Is Amanda a student? How do you know?

Ans: Yes, Amanda is a student because she is asked to complete her homework.

9. What does the line "never let down my bright hair" tell us about Amanda?

Ans: It tells us that Amanda does not want anybody to come up and spoil the silence or disturb her in any way.

10. The reader sympathises with the speaker in the poem. Support this opinion with a reason.

Ans: The speaker, probably her mother, is worried about her posture, skin, and school homework. But, Amanda gives her a deaf ear which makes the reader sympathizes with the speaker.

11. Do you consider Amanda's mother to be a nagging mother?

Ans: Amanda's mother is indeed a nagging mother. She is all about instructions and finding faults. No doubt it is her responsibility to instil good values into her daughter, but not at the cost of her child's happiness. One should know how to strike a balance between maintaining responsibilities and taking good care.

12. Is Amanda at fault at all?

Ans: Amanda is not at fault at all. It is too harsh for a small child to understand the concept of acne and not eating a chocolate. It is with pity that we look towards Amanda. No child in this world wants to be an orphan but Amanda is fed up of all the nagging and wishes to be one.. Amanda just seeks freedom from the overpowering environment around her.

13. What is the central theme of the poem Amanda?

Ans: The poem Amanda by Robin Klein highlights the importance of upbringing of a child. It points out that upbringing doesn't involve making a child responsible and fit for the society only. It is important to note that upbringing involves understanding from both the sides. One cannot just force a child to be civilised and good mannered. "Love and proper care is required in to nurture a child.

14. What kind of an image does "languid, emerald sea" evoke?

ANS: It evokes the image of a calm and green sea. The word 'languid' means 'relaxed' which points towards silent water. 'Emerald' is a green coloured gemstone that refers to the green colour of the seawater.

15. What do you think is the significance of the exclamation mark in the title of the poem 'Amanda!?'?

Ans: An exclamation mark is used to show sudden happiness, sadness, or anger. This mark is used with the word 'Amanda' In the poem to display the anger of the speaker who does not replied even after repeated calling.

16. 'Amanda is alone but not lonely in the world she envisions.' Justify the statement with reference to anyone image she pictures in her mind.

Ans: She wants to live alone and away from her parent's do's and don'ts. She imagines herself as a mermaid who is drifting happily in the sea. She envisions herself enjoying her solitude,

whereas a lonely person feels sad and upset. That's why it is said that she wants to live alone and not lonely.

17. Do you know the story of Rapunzel? Why does she want to be Rapunzel?

Ans: The story of Rapunzel revolves around her life on a high tower. She was locked in that tower by an evil witch. In due course of time, she got used to living there. She was very happy and content with her life in the tower. She had very long blonde hair which was used by the witch to climb the tall tower. Amanda desires a happy and satisfied life with no disturbance from others.

18. Is Amanda an orphan? Why does she say so?

Ans: No, Amanda is not an orphan as she is constantly being pointed out by one of her parents in the poem. She said so because she is sad and depressed because of the continuous scolding and nagging which she faces because of her parents. Therefore, she feels that it would have been much better and peaceful if she would have been an orphan.

19. Write a short note on the title of the poem?

Ans: The title of the poem is Amanda as it revolves around the upbringing of little girl named Amanda. Her life is full of struggles where she is denied freedom and expression. Through this gateway she experiences calmness, away from her nagging parents.

20. What is the Central Theme of the Poem Amanda?

The poem describes a girl named Amanda and her parents, most probably her mother, who controlling her for her behaviour. She is first pointed out for biting her nails and for not sitting straight. The mother also feels that Amanda sits in a very lazy manner with her shoulders bent. Continuous nagging can made a child moody and upset and sometimes it leads to it might cause trouble.

Answer (Value Based) Type Questions

Question 1.

Discuss the importance of proper upbringing with reference to the poem Amanda by Robin Klein.

Answer: Upbringing plays a key role in the formation and development of personality of children. The development of the organized pattern of behaviours and attitudes that makes a person acceptable for the society. We question the upbringing of an individual for his/her right and wrong doings.

The poem Amanda focuses on the friction and tense situation in the upbringing of Amanda, a pre-teen or early teen girl. More than anyone else, parents play a pivotal role in the personality development of a child. Inculcating values, moral principles, socially acceptable behaviour in a child is the paramount duty of the parents.

But Amanda is bombarded with instructions. The dos and don'ts make her life miserable. The child is now non-receptive to the instructions of her parents. The parents forgot that 'gentle parenting' is the right solution for the proper upbringing of the child. Here the little girl feels suffocation in the claustrophobic atmosphere in the home and wants fresh air of freedom.

Question 2.

How does Amanda tackle the nagging nature of her parents? Explain with examples from the poem. What values does it portray about Amanda?

Answer:

Defence mechanisms are psychological strategies that are unconsciously used to protect a person from anxiety arising from unacceptable thoughts or feelings. Amanda is using her careless behaviour to tide against the domineering parents who always shower her with set of instructions for dos and don'ts which makes her life totally colourless. The more the parents give instructions, the more the girl roams in her dreamworld.

When Amanda is asked to sit straight or not to bite the nails, she dreams herself as a mermaid swimming in the green calm sea. When she is asked to clean her room or do her homework, the little girl lands herself as an orphan in a street, wandering in each and every nook and corner.

Chocolates are forbidden for the little girl as the parent fears that she will have pimples on her face. But Amanda considers herself as the cute Rapunzel. But unlike the protagonist Rapunzel, she doesn't want to share her private world with anyone.

It is her dreamworld, which makes her tackle the nagging nature of her parents, who wants to project her as a role model for others.

Question 3.

State the key points in the poem Amanda. What do you learn from it?

Answer: Every child in this planet is unique. There is no meaning in comparing a child with others. Children are restless, inattentive and have short attention span. They.

Question 4. Escapism is one way to run away from harsh realities. Discuss in context to the poem.

Answer:

Escapism is one of the easiest way to run away from harsh realities in life. The imposition of multiple dos and don'ts make the life of the little girl Amanda an extremely dull one. It is her safe landing in her dream world helps her life a colourful one. When the parent restricts her movements and asks her to sit straight, she dives and swims in the calm deep sea. It is her dream world which rescues her from the harsh realities of her life.

When Amanda is asked to do her homework or clean her room, she roams in her imaginary street with bare foot, as if it is her home. When forbidden from eating chocolates, Amanda illusions herself as Rapunzel, the protagonist in the German fairy tale, fiercely protecting her private world.

It is this escapist behaviour which makes Amanda stay afloat in the endless tides of advices.

Question 5. Khalil Gibran in his poem CHILDREN says

*Your children are not your children*

*They are the sons and daughters of life's longing for itself*

*They come through you but not from you*

*And though they are with you yet they belong not to you*

*You may give them your love but not your thoughts.*

Do you agree with Khalil Gibran? Express your view on the basis of the poem Amanda!

Answer:

Yes, I completely agree with Khalil Gibran. The parents should not super impose their thoughts to their young ones. They should understand the fact that their children came through them and not from them. They should not deny the sky around their child as part of mending their child.

At the same time, the parent should play their pivotal role as the first and prime teacher of their child in acquiring good habits, ethics and values in life. Instead of flooding them with multiple instructions of dos and don'ts, they should adapt the 'gentle parenting' strategy which is more susceptible for positive outcomes.

#### **EXTRA SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS**

1. What is the central theme of the poem Amanda?

The poem Amanda by Robin Klein highlights the importance of upbringing of a child. It points out that upbringing doesn't involve making a child responsible and fit for the society, it also involves understanding from both the sides. One cannot just force a child to be civilized and good mannered. Love and proper care is required for nurturing a child.

2. Why does Amanda wish to be a mermaid, an orphan, or Rapunzel?

Amanda wishes to be a mermaid so she could drift alone by blissfully languid, emerald sea. She yearns to be an orphan so that she is able to roam the sea and make pattern using her bare feet. Being Rapunzel means she could live carefree on a high tower. Amanda wishes to be these so that she could avoid her suffocating reality.

3. Why does Amanda seem moody most of the times?

Amanda seems moody most of the time because she is trying to make an escape from her reality where she is nagged most of the times. It is indeed a sad state for a small child like Amanda to bear. Her only defense against such a harsh reality is her imagination. Hence, it makes her look moody and uninterested.

4. What message does the poet want to give through the poem — ‘Amanda’?

The poet wants to convey that parents in their endeavor to make their children well-behaved, well mannered and having good habits, give them too many instructions or nag (always finding fault) them. They should adopt positive measures, acceptable to children. Otherwise, they will stop listening to them and indulge in daydreaming as Amanda did.

5. List the things which Amanda’s mother doesn’t want her to do.

Her mother doesn't want her to hunch her shoulders and bend her body down. She stops her from eating chocolates as it would not be good for her pimpled face. She wants her to stop sulking as others would think that she is being nagged by her mother.

### **EXTRA LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS**

1. State the key points in the poem Amanda. What do you learn from it?

Every child is special in itself and parents should give proper space to children as they learn through experiences as well. It is natural for Amanda to seek freedom at her place, to curb that freedom means to make her angry and moody.

Robin Klein points that Amanda is forbidden to do anything without seeking permission. Everything she does is corrected by her mother all the time. She can't sit lazily around; she can't eat chocolate for that could cause acne. Amanda’s life is very suffocating and limited in itself. She yearns for freedom and choice. Her mother doesn't understand the fact that Amanda

is innocent and naive; she is too small to understand the benefits of advice. Amanda wishing to be an orphan reflects the failure of parenting.

2. Discuss the importance of proper upbringing with reference to the poem Amanda by Robin Klein. Upbringing plays an essential role in personality development of an adult. Robin Klein's poem Amanda highlights the tension in the 'proper' upbringing of a child. To instill good values and moral principles in a growing child comes as a foremost duty for the parents. However, the poem Amanda shows how a child feels trapped within the cluster of instructions. Amanda is a victim. No proper space is given to her creativity. She is instructed for everything. As a result, she feels trapped. Her imagination proves to be her escape and also her defense against her nagging parents. It is

very important to understand the situation of Amanda where her freedom is cut short by constant instructions and guidelines. Proper balance should be maintained and love and care should always be part of this two-way transaction.

### **EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS**

#### **A. Don't bite your nails, Amanda!**

**Don't hunch your shoulders, Amanda!**

**Stop that slouching and sit up straight,  
Amanda!**

**(There is a languid, emerald sea,  
where the sole inhabitant is me—  
a mermaid, drifting blissfully.)**

#### **1. The statement that is INCORRECT with reference to Amanda is.....**

- a. Amanda was an unhappy child as she was all alone in the uninhabited island.
- b. Amanda was often nagged by her mother and she hated it
- c. Amanda had her own imperfections and she did not want anybody's interference
- d. Amanda was not interested in listening to her mother.

#### **2. The word that can replace *blissfully* is .....**

- a. sadly
- b. happily
- c. miserably
- d. brightly

**3. Identify the image that shows hunching of shoulders.**



1

2

3

4

- a.1
- b.2
- c.3
- 4.d

**4. There is a languid, emerald sea.**

**The poetic device in the above line is.....**

- a. Metaphor
- b. Simile
- c. Alliteration
- d. Oxymoron

**5. Stop that slouching and sit up straight,**

**The poetic device in the above line is.....**

- a. Assonance
- b. Alliteration
- c. Simile
- d. Metaphor

**B. Did you finish your homework, Amanda?**

**Did you tidy your room, Amanda?**

**I thought I told you to clean your shoes,**

**Amanda!**

**(I am an orphan, roaming the street.**

**I pattern soft dust with my hushed, bare feet.**

**(The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet.)**

**6. Which among the following is not a chore?**

- a. Tiding up the room
- b. Cleaning shoes
- c. Doing homework
- d. Drawing patterns with dust

**7. The word that can replace hushed is.....**

- a. Quite
- b. Turbulent
- c. Agitating
- d. Noisy

**8. The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet. The poetic device used here is....**

**(I am an orphan, roaming the street.**

- a. Metaphor
- b. Simile
- c. Refrain
- d. Alliteration

**9. The line that describes Amanda's mother best is.....**

- a. loving and concerned
- b. mild and easy going
- c. distressing and upsetting
- d. caring and strict

**10 . Choose the emoticon that shows Amanda's feelings.**



1

2

3

4

a.2

b. 3

c.4

d. 1

**C. Don't eat that chocolate, Amanda!**

**Remember your acne, Amanda!**

**Will you please look at me when I'm speaking to you,  
Amanda!**

**(I am Rapunzel, I have not a care;  
life in a tower is tranquil and rare;  
I'll certainly never let down my bright hair!)**

**11. The line *Will you please look at me when I'm speaking to you*, tells us that.....**

- a. Amanda was listening to her mother
- b. Amanda was disinterested in what her mother was saying
- c. Amanda was staring at her mother, when she was speaking to her
- d. Amanda was afraid of her mother

**12. The statement that is CORRECT with reference to the extract is.....**

- a. Amanda imagines herself to be Rapunzel as she wants to be rescued
- b. She wants to be Rapunzel because she wishes to be have long hair
- c. Amanda wants to be all alone in the tower and enjoy the silence.
- d. Amanda wants to let her hair down and escape from the tower.

**13. The word that cannot replace *tranquil* is .....**

- a. Restful
- b. Peaceful
- c. Reposeful
- d. Disturbing

**14. 'life in a tower is *tranquil* and rare;'" the poetic device used in the above line is .....**

- a. Metaphor
- b. Simile
- c. Alliteration
- d. Oxymoron

**15. Which of the following statements are facts/opinions?**

- 1. Amanda must listen to her mother and do as she says

2. Amanda was constantly nagged by her mother
3. Amanda must not eat chocolates.
4. Amanda yearns for a peaceful life
  - a. F-1,2,3 O-4
  - b. F-1,2 O-3,4
  - c. F-2,4,1 O- 3 -
  - d. . F-2,4 O-1,3

**16. The poet uses parenthesis to.....**

- a. explain the poem in a better way
- b. create an interest in the reader
- c. reflect the inner thoughts of Amanda
- d. make the reader's aware of Amanda's past

**D. stop that sulking at once, Amanda!**

**You're always so moody, Amanda!**

**Anyone would think that I nagged at you,**

**Amanda**

**17"stop that sulking at once, Amanda". The poetic device used in the line is.....**

- a. Alliteration
- b. Simile
- c. Synecdoche
- d. Metaphor

**18. The word that can replace the word sulking in the above stanza is .....**

- a. Grumpy
- b. Grinning
- c. Smiling
- d. Snoring

**19. Assertion – Amanda is always moody.**

**Reasoning – Her mother constantly nags her**

- a. (1) is the result of (2).
- b. (1) is the reason for (2).
- c. (1) is independent of (2).
- d. (1) contradicts (2).

**20. Anyone would think that I nagged at you, the line is an example of.....**

- a. rhetoric
- b. irony
- c. parenthesis
- d. poetic license

21. Which of the following images does not reflect the nature of Amanda's mother?

1



2



3



4



- a. 3
- b. 4
- c. 1
- d. 2

#### ANSWER KEY (EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS)

<b>1</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>b</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>c</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>b</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>d</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>c</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>b</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>c</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>d</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>c</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>d</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>c</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>a</b>

<b>19</b>	<b>a</b>
<b>20</b>	<b>b</b>
<b>21</b>	<b>c</b>

## ANIMALS

BY WALT WHITMAN

### I. SUMMARY OF THE POEM

The poem 'Animals' by Walt Whitman depicts animals as being better than humans in many ways. The poet shares with the readers what he feels about animals. He says that he feels more at home with animals than humans, whom he finds complicated and false. According to him, animals are better than human beings. In this sense animals are more humane than the humans. The poet compares the actions of animals and human beings. He says that, unlike humans, animals neither complain nor cringe about anything in their life. Animals are simple; self-contained, satisfied and are not after owning things. They neither weep for their sins nor cry over their unfavourable conditions. Animals do not bow down to any other animal. There is no issue of poverty or affluence in the realm of animals. They practice the principle of equality and lead a well-balanced life. The poet feels more at home with animals than humans whom he finds complicated, materialistic and false.

### II. VALUE POINTS

1. The poem presents a contrast between animals and human beings
2. The poet wishes to live with animals and experience a life devoid of complaints, sins, and sorrows.
3. Animals are better than the humans in many ways.
4. Animals do not weep for their sins and they do not care to worship even God.
5. They respect none including their ancestors and they remain indifferent in their pleasures and pains.
6. They are free from all types of trivial anxieties.

7. They possess certain inherent qualities which humans do not have.
8. Animals are self-satisfied.
9. Human beings should try to possess the positive qualities that the animals have.
10. Humans choose to ignore or deny many aspects of Nature.
11. Modernisation has deprived man of tokens of love, kindness, sympathy, fellow-feelings etc. which once he had possessed.
12. Civilization has also made the humans to deviate from their own true nature.

### III. CONCEPT MAP

1. Figure of speech used in the poem:	2. Technical aspect of the poem:
Repetition (long and long) verse (poem without rhyme scheme) Metaphor (I wonder where they get those tokens)	The poem is written in free- verse Alliteration (make me sick) Assonance (mania of owning things)

### 3. Background of the poem

The poem belongs to the Romantic tradition of Rousseau and Wordsworth which holds the view that civilization has deviated humans from their own true nature.

### IV. ANSWER THE GIVEN QUESTIONS BRIEFLY. (2 marks for each question)

1. What does the poet wish to do at the beginning of the poem?

Ans:- The poet wishes that he could transform and become one with animals.

2. What do humans do to other human beings who lived thousands of years ago?

Ans:- Human beings hold their ancestors in great respect.

3. What conclusion does the poet come to at the end of the poem?

Ans. The poet says that as a human being he must have lost his natural virtues sometime in the past. Presently those virtues are possessed only by the animals.

4. “I think I could turn and live with animals...” What is the poet turning from?

Ans. The poet is turning away from living with other humans as he finds them complicated and false. He would rather live with animals that are self-contained and non-complaining.

5. Do humans kneel to other humans who lived thousands of years ago? Give reason for your answer.

Ans. Yes, humans kneel to other humans who lived thousands of years ago. They worship their ancestors and pray by kneeling in front of their portraits. They hold religious sermons and ceremonies in their memory.

6. Why does the poet like animals?

Ans. The poet likes animals for their self-contained and quiet nature. The fact that animals are not like human beings and are satisfied with their lives appeals to the poet a lot.

7. Explain the satisfaction that animals have and humans don't. **[CBSE 2014]**

Ans. Animals do not have the desire to possess worldly things. On the other hand, the more humans own, the more their desire to own grows, leaving them dissatisfied forever. The absence of this greed in animals keeps them satisfied and its presence keeps humans dissatisfied.

8. Why do animals not weep for their sins?

Ans. Animals do not weep for their sins because they do not need to do so. They are innocent creatures that commit no sins. It is the humans who commit sins and later weep for it too.

9. What makes the poet sick?

Ans. The fact, that humans commit all kinds of sins and still discuss their duty to God, makes the poet sick. This shows the hypocrisy of humans, who on one hand do wrong and on the other pray to God.

10. Differentiate between humans and animals in terms of desire.

Ans. Animals are very different from humans as they have no desire to own things. They are happy without an unending greed while humans become maniacs in their greed for possessing valuables.

11. What does the poet mean by, "Not one is respectable or unhappy over the whole earth"?

Ans. The poet means that animals do not pray to God or to any ancestors, and all of them are equal. Hence no one is more respectable than the other. The good values of animals and their lack of social conventions make them happy.

**V. ANSWER THE GIVEN QUESTIONS IN TWO OR THREE SENTENCES.**  
**( 3 marks for each question)**

1. What are the ‘tokens of myself’ for the poet which the animals bring back to him?

Ans: The ‘tokens of myself’ are tokens of love, affection, sympathy, kindness, fellow-feelings for all etc. These are shown by animals. They are very essential for a smooth life. The animals show these in their behaviour. Thus they differ from men, who are deceptive, greedy and dishonest.

2. How does the poet look at animals?

Ans: For the poet the animals are more humane than the humans. They have no such bad qualities as the humans have. In their world all are happy and content. They do not complain about anything. They show their relations to the poet and he accepts them.

3. What are the poetic devices used by the poet in the poem?

Ans: The first poetic device that comes to our mind when we talk about Walt Whitman’s poem is his use of ‘free verse’. It is that type of poem where the poet does not follow any rhyme scheme or metre. Another poetic device used in the poem is ‘Repetition’-It is the repetition of words or phrases in the same line. For example, “I stand and look at them long long.” Another poetic device employed in the poem is ‘Alliteration’- It is the repetition of the same initial consonant sounds in the same line. Eg: - Mania of owning things. The poet also makes use of ‘Metaphor’ in the poem. For example, the comparison of inner qualities of human beings as ‘tokens’.

4. Mention three things that humans do and animals don’t.

Ans. The poet has drawn three comparisons between humans and animals. Humans sweat and work to make a living and later whine and sulk about the amount of work they have to do to survive. Animals, on the other hand, are satisfied with their life and do not whine about their condition. Humans lie awake at night and cry for the sins they have committed. Animals do not weep for anything they do and sleep peacefully. Finally, humans make each other sick by discussing their duties to God. However, animals do not have any Gods, and they live and survive without any prayers or fasts.

5. Differentiate between humans and animals in terms of desire.

Ans. Animals are very different from humans as they have no desire to own things. They are happy as they are devoid of unending greed while humans become maniacs in their greed for possessing valuables.

## VI-LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS

1. What are the ‘tokens’ that the poet says he may have dropped long ago, and which the animals have kept for him? Elaborate this with reference to the poem, ‘Animals’.

Ans. Walt Whitman belongs to the Romantic tradition that includes Rousseau and Wordsworth, and holds the view that civilisation has made humans false to their own true nature. The poet in the poem, ‘Animals’ says “I wonder where they get those tokens, Did I pass that way huge times ago and negligently drop them?”

The token that the poet says he might have dropped long ago, and which the animals have kept for him, is his true nature as a human. While humans came close to civilisation, they gradually moved away from their true nature. The natural instincts that humans had and the innocence with which they lived and helped each other have been left behind somewhere. As they got near civilisation, they chose to leave behind the virtues of kindness, sincerity, selflessness, joy, satisfaction, respectability, and sharing attitude. They took to vices such as greed, selfishness, desire to capture everything, and many other such inhuman characteristics. Animals have carried forward the real instincts and characteristics, which the poet looks at and tries to remember where he had negligently lost his true nature.

2. Why do you think the poet has called the desire to own things, a mania? Is the poet right in doing so? Write your own views.

Ans. The poet uses words such as ‘demented’ and ‘mania’ for never ending desire of human beings to own things. These words show that poet is comparing this desire to madness. The poet stands right in doing so as this desire makes us so greedy and traps us in a vicious circle of aspiring for more and more. Animals that are free from any possession are also free from sins, worries and complaints. In order to gain more wealth, humans leave all the important values such as morality and kindness behind.

3. What according to you should be the virtues that humans should possess?

Ans. Human beings should be gentle not only to their own kind but also to everything around them. Virtues such as kindness bring along other important values like innocence and honesty that together make the world a better place to live. The lack of such values results in a corrupt society where people commit sins and weep over them in dark. This situation makes them dissatisfied and unhappy in life. Human beings probably had these virtues in them but along with civilisation processes, they have left them behind and adopted greed and cunningness.

4. It is not complaining but accepting a situation, the key to happiness in life. Elaborate in context of the poem ‘Animals’. **[CBSE 2015]**

Ans. The poet Walt Whitman in his poem ‘Animals’ compares animals to human beings and

differentiates between them on the basis of their characteristics. Animals have been ranked much higher than humans in the poet's perception. Since animals do not complain about their situation, they are considered to be much happier than humans. Animals live in natural surroundings and accept their natural lives. Humans, on the other hand, have never accepted Nature. They complain about it and try to change it, leading to an unhappy life.

**5.** The poet in the poem 'Animals' laments the loss of certain values on the part of human beings, whereas animals seem to have retained them and are self-contented. Analyse the cause of degeneration of values in today's hard times.

Ans. In the modern civilised world, human beings have achieved a lot of material values but lost the real virtues. The more developed and modern human beings became, the more they lost the essence of their characters. Animals, on the other hand, never adapted to any material ways and always remained natural. This natural aspect of animals has helped them maintain their values. Humans, in order to possess more and more, have forgotten kindness and innocence.

## VII. MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

1. They do not sweat and whine about their condition. What is the meaning of the word 'whine'?

- a. Beverage
- b. Cry
- c. Shout
- d. Now

2. Who wrote the poem "Animals"?

- a. Robert Forest
- b. Carl Sandburg
- c. Walt Whitman
- d. W.B. Yates

3. "I wonder where they get those tokens" Name the literacy device used in the line

- a. Alliteration
- b. Assonance
- c. Personification
- d. Metaphor

4. Who kneels to another?

- a. Man

- b. Animal
- c. Both
- d. Name of the above

5. How do animals appear to the poet?

- a. Calm
- b. Full of self confidence
- c. Well contented
- d. All of the above

6. What does the poet want to turn from?

- a. Human beings
- b. Animals
- c. Good qualities
- d. All the above

7. The poet wants to live in the world of

- a. Birds
- b. War
- c. Animals
- d. People

8. Animals never ---in front of anyone

- a. Sleep
- b. Lie
- c. Bow down
- d. Jump

9. Animals do not talk about the duty towards -----

- a. Family
- b. Others
- c. God
- d. Society

10. The word “demented” means

- a. Liked
- b. Mad
- c. Loved
- d. Eccentric

11. The animals evidently show that the ‘tokens’ are -----

- a. Near the others
- b. Away from them
- c. In their possession
- d. In other's pockets

12. what qualities have the humans given up

- a. Truthfulness
- b. Kindness
- c. Innocence
- d. All of the above

13. What is the meaning of 'placid'?

- a. Clumsy
- b. Peaceful
- c. Greedy
- d. Jealous

14. Human beings have the mania of owning -----

- a. Friends
- b. Good habits
- c. Happiness
- d. Money

15. What does the poet wish to live with?

- a. Humans
- b. Gods
- c. Animals
- d. None of the above

16. "Not one is respectable or unhappy over the whole earth". This refers to ----

- a. Social leaders
- b. Common people
- c. Animals
- d. Animal lovers

17. "Weep for their sins" refers to -----

- a. Cruelty of animals
- b. Sinful human beings
- c. Beings in general
- d. All those commit sin.

18. Assertion: Animals are more humane than humans

Reason: Animals possess the same qualities as human beings

- A. Assertion is true but reason is false
- B. Assertion is false but reason is true
- C. Both assertion and reason are true
- D. Both assertion and reason are false

19. Assertion; The poet Walt Whitman is thinking about turning from being a human being to being an animal.

Reason; Animals are more human and simpler than human beings.

- A. Assertion is true but reason is false
- B. Assertion is false but reason is true
- C. Both assertion and reason are true
- D. Both assertion and reason are false

20. Assertion: The poem 'Animals' is antagonistic to the traditional Indian culture

Reason: Many of the country's cultural values like reverence given to those who lived thousands of years ago, duty to God, weeping for the sins, etc. are scoffed at by the poet.

- A. Assertion is true but reason is false
- B. Assertion is false but reason is true
- C. Both assertion and reason are true
- D. Both assertion and reason are false

### **Answer Key**

1. b. Cry (The word meaning most suitable)
2. c. Walt Whitman (The poet who composed the poem)
3. a. Alliteration (Most suitable figure of speech for repeated sound)
4. a. Man (As only man kneels before another)
5. d. All of the above (Animal have all these qualities)
6. a. Human beings (As the poet wants to be with animals)
7. c. Animals (As the poet has high esteem of them)

8. c. Bow down (They have their own perception)
9. c. God (As they are not conscious of a higher entity)
10. b. Mad (The most suitable word meaning for the same)
11. c. In their possession (As they were sure of what they had)
12. d. all of the above (As humans have truly lost their virtues)
13. b. Peaceful (The most suitable meaning for the word)
14. d. Money (As humans are highly money oriented)
15. c. Animals (as the poet holds them in high esteem)
16. c. Animals (animals do not engage in unnecessary brain raking)
17. b. Sinful human beings (As they are obsessed about their sins)
18. a. Assertion is true but reason is false-Animals are ranked much higher than humans throughout the poem
19. C. Both assertion and reason are true-The inner qualities which humans once possessed have been negligently dropped by humans-Animals do not weep for their sins and do not pay respect to their elders or even to God.
20. D-The poet's main intention is not to scoff at these values as such but to point out that human beings have rendered undue importance to these things and negligently dropped the tokens of love, kindness, sympathy, fellow feelings etc. which they once possessed.

### **VIII. EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS**

1. They do not sweat and whine about their condition.
  - a. They don't feel
    - i. Miserable at their condition
    - ii. Happy at their condition
    - iii. Satisfied at their condition
    - iv. Excited at their condition
2. They do not lie awake in the dark and weep for their sins
  - b. Animals evidently have
    - i. A disturbed sleep at night
    - ii. A sound sleep at night
    - iii. Restful sleep at night
    - iv. Little sleep at night
3. I think I could turn and live with animals. They are so placid and self-contained.
  - c. The poet wants to turn

- i. Into an animal
- ii. Into a fine gentleman
- iii. Into a new person
- iv. Into a beast

4. I wonder where they get the tokens

- d. The poet wonders from where
  - i. Animals have got that ferocity
  - ii. Animals have got those virtues
  - iii. Animal have got those noble virtues and tokens of love
  - iv. Animals have got that much love

5. They bring me tokens of my self

- e. The line means
  - i. They bring out those noble virtues that are present in the poet
  - ii. They show noble virtues they learned
  - iii. The show love and respect
  - iv. They are like human beings.

### **Answer key**

- 1. a. i
- 2. b. iii
- 3. c. i
- 4. d. ii
- 5. e. i

## THE TALE OF CUSTARD THE DRAGON

### About the Poet

Frederic Ogden Nash (1902-1971) was an American poet famous for his light verse. He was known as the producer of humorous poetry.

Central Idea: Everything created whether small or big has its specific importance. Usually, we underestimate talented persons but they prove themselves by their wits and right actions. We should never look down upon others. Moreover, right and timely actions are always

beneficial.

### Theme

The theme of the poem is that everyone has his own capabilities and should never be judged on the basis of his appearance. In the poem, Belinda and all pets she owns boast about their bravery. Belinda was as strong as a barrel full of bears, Ink and Blink were brave and fearless enough to chase lions down the stairs and Mustard considered itself as brave as an angry tiger.

However Custard never boasted about its might and power and instead always cried for a nice and safe cage. Hence Belinda and all her pets used to make fun of Custard. They would tease him mercilessly and call him bad names. But Custard never reacted and rather accepted what they said.

But, when the pirate attacks the house of Belinda, all the so-called brave animals run away to save their lives though Belinda keeps crying for help. At this time, Custard comes forward at once and faces the pirate. The pirate tries to kill him by firing bullets. However they do not hit him and Custard eats him up.

### Message

The story tells us that we should never judge a person on the basis of his looks or what others say about him. Every person is unique and capable in his own way.

Summary: The poem “The Tale of Custard, the Dragon” is a light verse ballad written by “Frederich Ogden Nash” .( A ballad is a poem that tells a story. The theme of a ballad is an adventure, bravery, romance, etc. Then it is highly musical due to its rhyme scheme. )

Various animals have been personified and are the main characters of the poem. The central figure of the poem as the title indicates is Custard, a pet dragon, which is looked down upon by his fellows because of his cowardice.

Belinda is a little girl who lives in a little white house with her pets. She had a black kitten named Ink, a grey mouse named Blink, a yellow dog Mustard and a cowardly dragon Custard. The poet says that all of them are very brave except the dragon. Others were

described as brave and are compared with animals like bear, tiger or lion but the dragon is very timid. He always demands a safe place for himself. All the other characters make fun of him. But one night they are surprised by the entry of a pirate in the house. All of them get frightened and start hiding here and there. But to everyone's surprise, the dragon not only tackles him but also eats him up. As all of them are saved by custard, they thank him. But at the end, they realize that they used to make fun of the dragon because of his being timid. So, all of them suddenly start saying that they are braver and could have handled the situation in a much better way. Here the poet has tried to say that sometimes a timid person is the actual hero in the toughest situations of life.

Following are the characters of the poem:

- i. A little girl named Belinda. Belinda is depicted as brave as a large number of bears put together.
- ii. A little black kitten whose name is Ink.
- iii. A little grey mouse named Blink (Ink and blink are so brave that they can chase lions)
- iv. A dog named Mustard because he is yellow in colour. Mustard is also compared to an angry lion in terms of bravery
- v. A coward dragon whose name is Custard ,he has big sharp teeth, spikes on his top and scales beneath. His mouth is like a fireplace, nose like a chimney and has knife-like daggers on his toes.
- vi. Pirate. He has pistols in both his hands and a bright, sharp knife between his teeth. He has a black beard and looks dreadful with one leg that is wooden.

Rhyme scheme: aabb

#### Literary Devices:

##### . Stanza 1

Repetition: use of the word 'little'

oxymoron: use of two words with opposite meanings ' "pet dragon"

Anaphora: repeated use of word at the start of two consecutive lines. (And a little ....And a realio)

Refrain: Repetition of a sentence again and again (And a realio, trulio,)

poetic license: realio, trulio for real, true. The spellings have been changed to create a musical effect

##### Stanza 2

simile: dog compared to mustard "And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard"

Alliteration: “coward, and she called him Custard” – “c” sound

Anaphora: repeated use of word at the start of two consecutive lines (And the little grey...And the little yellow)

Repetition: use of word little

Personification: : Ink, Blink ,Mustard and Custard are treated here with human qualities

### Stanza 3

Simile: Dragon’s mouth is compared with fireplace (mouth like a fireplace)

Refrain: Repetition of a sentence again and again (And a realio, trulio,)

Metaphor: “chimney for a nose”. The nose is like a chimney. And daggers on his feet

### Stanza 4

Alliteration: Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears “b” sound is repeated

Simile: Belinda’s bravery is compared to that of a barrel full of bears (as a barrel full of bears), Mustard’s bravery is compared to that of an angry tiger (Mustard was as brave as a tiger in a rage)

Assonance: use of vowel sound ‘a’ (Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears)

### Stanza 5

Refrain: Repetition of a sentence again and again (And a realio, trulio,)

Repetition: use of the word ‘tickled him’

Allusion: reference to any person or place (Percival). Percival was a great warrior in King Arthur’s army.

Personification: Ink, Blink and Mustard, they rudely called him Percival

### Stanza 6

Onomatopoeia: usage of sound words (giggled, weeck)

A hyperbole is a literary device where the poet/writer/speaker purposely and obviously exaggerates to an extreme. ‘Belinda giggled till she shook the house’

Repetition: Custard cried for a nice safe cage

### Stanza 7

Consonance: use of consonant sound ‘s’ (Suddenly, suddenly they heard a nasty sound)

Repetition: use of the word ‘suddenly’

Onomatopoeia: usage of sound words to create a dramatic effect (Mustard growled, Meowch, cried ink)

Poetic license: window is written as ‘winda’ to create rhyme.

### Stanza 8

Alliteration: beard was black “b”, he held his “h”

Imagery: An image is created about the appearance of the pirate.

### Stanza 9

transferred epithet: terrified yelp

Repetition: help help

Poetic license: use of the word mousehold to rhyme with household

### Stanza 10

Simile: sound of dragon is compared with sound of engine (snorting like an engine), Clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon, dragon’s attack on pirate is compared to robin bird (like a robin at a worm)

Onomatopoeia: usage of sound words to create a dramatic effect (clatter, clank, jangling)

Imagery: The attack by the dragon is expressed in a way to make an image in our minds.

### Stanza 11

alliteration: gulped some grog “g”

Imagery: They have shown the reaction and actions made by the pirate on seeing the dragon.

### Stanza 12

alliteration: glee did gyrate “g”

Assonance: use of vowel sound ‘o’ (no one mourned for), use of vowel sound ‘I’ (ink and blink in glee did), use of vowel sound ‘a’ (that ate the pirate)

### Stanza 13

### Stanza 14 and15

Refrain: Repetition of a line again and again (And a realio, trulio)

Repetition: stanza has been repeated

### Value points

1.Belinda lived in a little white house with her pets (A little black kitten whose name is Ink, A little grey mouse named Blink, A dog named Mustard because he is yellow in colour. . A coward dragon whose name is Custard and they have a red wagon.

2.All other pets ,except the dragon were considered brave . Custard ,the dragon was always crying for a nice safe cage

3. Belinda tries to tickle Custard so that he becomes expressive and bold. His other friends tease him and call him innocent and coward.

4.They all usually sit in the little red wagon and ridicule their friend, Custard. Belinda and

her friends laugh at him and ask him his age but Custard does not agitate and retreats to a safe place.

5. One day, they hear an unpleasant shocking sound. All of them get startled and astonished.

6, They see a pirate entering their house through a window. He has pistols in both of his hands and a bright, sharp knife between his teeth. He has a black beard and looks dreadful.

7. All the members of the house understand his wrong intention and become nervous and terrified. They start yelling and moving towards safer places.

8. But Custard jumps like a thunderous engine and squirming, he eats up the pirate like a bird swallows a worm.

9. The pirate tries to defend himself by shooting at the dragon but his efforts prove to be in vain and the dragon swallows him without sparing even a single bit.

10. Now all the members of Belinda's house start praising and encouraging him.

11. All of them sing and dance for their victory and appreciate Custard.

12. Soon, they start boasting about themselves that they could have done better than Custard if they had not been nervous and confused.

13. Custard, being very calm and composed considers himself inferior to his companions in spite of his heroic efforts.

14. In the last stanza, the poet again repeats the beginning stanza i.e. uses refrain and describes the Custard as coward again because he again prefers to be away from conflicts and fights.

## MCQ

Question 1.

Who mourned over the death of the pirate?

- (a) Blink
- (b) Custard
- (c) Ink
- (d) None

Question 2.

What did the dragon cry for?

- (a) Because he was hurt.
- (b) For a new mouse
- (c) For a nice safe cage.

(d) None of the Above

Question 3.

Who was called cowardly?

(a) Blink

(b) Custard

(c) Ink

(d) Mustard

Question 4

What is the rhyme scheme of the poem?

the rhyme scheme of the poem is

(a) 'abba'

(b) 'aabb'.

(c) 'abab'

(d) 'aaba'

Question 5.

. What was the colour of the wagon?

(a) Black

(b) Yellow

(c) Red

(d) White

Question 6

Who ran with a fearful bark. ?

(a) Mustard

(b) Pirate

(c) Custard

(d) Belinda

Question 7

What is the poet's purpose of using the onomatopoeic words given in the following lines?

Clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon,

With a clatter and a clank and a jangling squirm

He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm.

a) It is to emphasize on the might and boldness of Custard.

- b) It is to introduce the character Custard to the readers.
- c) It is to impress upon the readers that Custard was ready.
- d) It is to make Custard bold enough to face the situation.

Question 8

‘Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears’. Identify two poetic devices used in the above line.

- (a) Metaphor and alliteration
- (b) Hyperbole and consonance
- (c) Simile and alliteration
- (d) Simile and Anaphora

Question 9

. The dragon had daggers on his toes. Identify the poetic device

- (a) Metaphor
- (b) Simile
- (c) Poetic licence
- (d) Hyperbole

Question 10. Select the option that fits with the reaction of the characters in the context of the extract.

Ink: terrified : : Blink : i) \_\_\_\_\_

Pirate: ii) \_\_\_\_\_ :: Custard: undaunted

- a) i) shocked ii) displeased
- b) i) petrified ii) wondered
- c) i) upset ii) dazed
- d) i) petrified ii) shocked

Question 11: ‘He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm. Why has this comparison been used here?

- a) Custard attacked the pirate after careful observation.
- b) Custard attacked the pirate without delay.
- c) Custard attacked the pirate valorously.
- d) Custard attacked the pirate stealthily.

Question 12

Pick the option that does not display a simile

- a) Clashed his tail like irons.....
- b) .....at the pirate like a robin at a worm.

c) ....Custard, snorting like an engine.....

d) .....trickled down to the bottom.....

### Question 13

‘According to the poem ‘irons’ is a reference to-----,in the line ‘irons in a dungeon’.

- a) iron racks for scared books.
- b) iron cases housing treasures.
- c) iron chains holding the prisoners captive.
- d) iron coffins for burying the royal dead.

### Question 14

A cage means captivity. Why is Custard inclined to remain in a cage despite what it symbolises?

This is so because he viewed it as a

- 1) sanctuary 2) guardhouse 3) cubicle 4) refuge 5) booth
- a) 1, 2 & 5
- b) 1 & 4
- c) 3, 4 & 5
- d) 3 & 5

### Question 15

The poet used the word ‘weeck’ to signify the giggling of the mouse?

The poet

- a) uses it to add suspense in the poem.
- b) has imagined how the mouse would sound in this mood.
- c) has mocked the mouse for giggling at Custard.
- d) uses it to create a scary effect for readers.

### Question 16

Choose the option that includes an example of hyperbole?

- a) And Mustard growled, and they all looked around
- b) Ink and Mustard rudely asked his age
- c) Belinda giggled till she shook the house,
- d) When Custard cried for a nice safe cage.

### Question 17

What did Custard do to the pirate?

- (a) ate him
- (b) scared him away
- (c) held him hostage
- (d) None of these

Question 18

The Pirate came to Belinda's house through the -----

- (a) Chimney
- (b) Back door
- (c) Attic
- (d) Window

Question 19.

Who is 'Percival'?

- (a) Custard
- (b) Pirate
- (c) A warrior
- (d) A coward

Question 20

Assertion: Custard was really not satisfied in the little white house.

Reason: Custard always keep crying for a nice cage.

- a) Both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- b) Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- c) Assertion is true and reason is false.
- d) Assertion is false and reason is true.

Question 21.

Assertion: Percival was a coward knight

Reason: Custard is called as 'Percival'.

- a) Both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- b) Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- c) Assertion is true and reason is false.
- d) Assertion is false and reason is true.

Question 22.

Assertion: Belinda's gave the name 'Mustard' to the dog

Reason: Because his colour is yellow and very sharp in detecting smell

- a) Both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- b) Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- c) Assertion is true and reason is false.
- d) Assertion is false and reason is true.

### Question 23

Assertion: Custard clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon with a clatter and clank

Reason: He was really afraid of the Pirate and tried to escape from the scene.

- a) Both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- b) Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- c) Assertion is true and reason is false.
- d) Assertion is false and reason is true.

### Question 24.

Assertion: Custard was older than everyone of the house.

Reason: Ink and Mustard rudely asked his age.

- a) Both assertion and reason are correct and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- b) Both assertion and reason are correct but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- c) Assertion is true and reason is false.
- d) Assertion is false and reason is true.

### Short Answer Questions ( 2 Marks each)

1. How did each of Belinda's pets react at the sight of the pirate?

At the sight of the pirate ,Belinda's pets ran away and hid , for they were scared of the pirate.

2. How is the " The Tale of Custard the Dragon" a ballad ?

A ballad is a poem that tells a story . This poem has qualities of adventure and bravery. And the poet is showing these qualities in a humorous way.

3. Why did Belinda cry for help? Who came to help ?

Since Belinda was scared of the pirate ,she cried for help. The Custard came to her help.

4. Who all lived in the white house with Belinda ?

Ink – a black kitten, Blink- a grey mouse, Mustard – a yellow dog, Custard -a dragon and a red wagon.

5. Why did everyone make fun of the dragon ?

Every one made fun of the dragon ,because he always cried for a safe cage ,but others boasted about their bravery.

6. Where did Belinda live ? Which animals lived with Belinda ?

Belinda lived in a little white house . A black kitten , a grey mouse, a yellow dog and a pet dragon lived with Belinda.

7. Belinda and other animals have been described as brave. But on seeing the pirate , they behaved in a cowardly way . How did they react ?

Belinda turned pale with fear. She cried for help. Mustard ran barking fearfully. Ink went to the bottom of the house. And the little mouse ran into his hole.

8. How did they say their admiration for the dragon after the death of the pirate?

They became very happy . Belinda embraced him and mustard licked him.Ink and Blink jumped with happiness. .Thus they expressed their joy .

9. Who are the characters of the poem? List them with their pet names .

Littlie black kitten Ink

Littlie grey mouse Blink

Littlie yellow dog Mustard

The dragon Custard

10. Why did Custard cry for a nice safe cage? Why is the dragon called “cowardly dragon”?

Ans: The custard was coward. That is why he was called “cowardly dragon”. All other animals laughed at him. He did not like that. So he cried for a nice safe cage.

11. “Belinda tickled him, she tickeld him unmerciful....”why?

Ans: Belinda tickled Custard to tease him for his cowardice.

12. Read the stanza three again to know how the poet describes the appearance of the dragon.

Ans: The poet describes the physical side of the dragon . By stating his ‘ big sharp teeth’ , “spikes” and “scales”, the poet makes him fearful.

13. Can you find out the rhyme scheme of two or three stanzas of the poem?

Ans: Second stanza ---aa bb

Third stanza \_\_aa bb

Short Answer Questions- 3 marks

14. The poet has employed many poetic devices in the poem. For example “clashed his tail like iron in a dungeon . “ ---the poetic device here is a simile. Can you ,with your partner, list some more such poetic devices used in the poem.

Ans: Similes used in this poem

\_\_ And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard.

\_\_Belinda is as brave as a barrel full of bears

\_\_Snorting like an engine.

\_\_He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm.

15. How did Custard prove to be brave when the pirate came ?

Custard jumped and snorted like an engine and struck the pirate with his tail like iron .there were different sounds of clatter, clank and jangle. He attacked the pirate as a robin attacks a worm.

16. . how did the pirate react when the dragon attacked him?

The pirate swallowed some liquor from his pocket flagon and fired two bullets but did not hit the dragon. The dragon attacked him and swallowed him in the end.

17. Who among them was really brave? How did they show his bravery ?

Cusatard ,the dragon, was the only one who was brave. The others were all cowards. They disappeared when they saw the pirate. But the dragon faced him bravely and swallowed him up.

18. What did they say about their bravery after the pirate’s death ?

Mustard said that he would have been twice as brave, if he had not grown nervous.

Ink and Blink said that they had been three times as brave as he . But custard said that he agreed with them. He said that they were braver than him .

19. Writers use words to give us a picture or image without actually saying what they mean. Can you trace some images used in the poem?

Ans: a) Mouth like afire place.

b) Chimney for a nose.

c) Daggers on his toes.

d) His beard was long, one leg was wood.

20. Do you find The Tale of Custard the Dragon to be a serious or light-hearted poem? Give reasons to support your answer.

Ans: It is a light-hearted poem. The animals have been treated as human beings. There is irony in the poem. The animals who boast of their power and courage, prove to be cowards. Whereas the dragon whom everyone calls cowardly, fights bravely and kills the pirate.

### Extracts

Read the following extracts carefully and answer the questions that follow:

(1) Now the Name of the little black kitten was Ink  
And the little grey mouse , She called him Blink  
And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard.  
But the dragon was a coward , and she called him Custard.

1.What was the name of the dog?

Mustard

2.Why was the dragon named as “Custard” ?

Because he was a coward.

3.What name did she give to the mouse?

The mouse was named Blink

4.How was the kitten was described ?

The kitten was described little and black

5. Which poetic device used in the third line of the given stanza ?

Simile.

(2) Custard the dragon had big sharp teeth,

And spikes on top of him and scales underneath'

Mouth like a fire place, chimney for a nose

And realio,trulio daggers on his toes

1. What sort of teeth Custard the dragon have ?

Custard had big sharp teeth.

2. What was on the top of the dragon's body ?

The dragon had spikes on the top of his body

3. How does the poet describe the dragon's mouth and nose ?

The poet describes his mouth like a fireplace and nose like a chimney.

4. Identify the rhyme scheme of the stanza .

Rhyme Scheme : aa bb

5. Find out the poetic device applied in the following "chimney for a nose"

Metaphor

( 3). Belinda lived in a little white house,

With a little black kitten and a little grey mouse,

And a little yellow dog and a little red wagon,

And a realio, trulio, little pet dragon.

1. Where did Belinda live ?

Belinda lived in a little white house.

2. How is the kitten described ?

The poet describes as little and black kitten

3. Which other animals were living with Belinda apart from the kitten?

A mouse, a dog, and a dragon

4. What is the rhyme scheme of the stanza ?

Rhyme scheme: aa bb

5. Identify the poetic device applied in the fourth line - ----'pet dragon.'

Oxymoron

(4.) Belinda paled , and she cried Help! Help!

But Mustard fled with a terrified yelp,

Ink trickled down to the bottom of the house hold,

And little mouse Blink strategically mouse holed

1. What did Mustard do?

Mustard ran with a fearful bark.

2. Why did Belinda get pale ?

She got paled to see the pirate.

3. What did Belinda cry for ?

Belinda cried for help.

4. What did Blimk do on seeing the pirate ?

Blink ran into his mouse hole

5. Find a word from the stanza which means same as diplomatically.

Strategically

( 5 ).The pirate gaped at Belinda's dragon,

And gulped some grog from his pocket flagon

He fired two bullets, but they didn't hit,

And Custard gobbled him, every bit.

1. What did the dragon do to the pirate ?

The dragon swallowed the pirate .

2. What did the pirate gulp ?

The pirate gulped grog from his flagon.

3. How did the pirate attack Custard ?

The pirate fired two bullets but they did not hit .

4. Find a word from the stanza which means same as a container

flagon

5. Identify the poetic device applied in the second line .

Alliteration: gulped some grog “

#### LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (5 marks Questions)

1.Why do you think Custard ,the dragon was called a coward? How was Custard able to save all his housemates from the pirate? .What values should Belinda have possessed so that Custard also could have been among her favorites?

The dragon was called coward because he appeared to be a coward as he always cried for a safe cage. Later, when the pirate entered the house with the pistols in his left and right hand

everyone was scared and ran away and disappeared except Custard who faced him boldly and attacked ,hit him hard with his forceful tail and gobbled every bit of him .Belinda should have been nice to him. She should have made him feel comfortable and safe in the house instead of laughing and making fun of him with other pets. Belinda should have been protective towards him.

2. What was the trouble faced by Belinda and her pets ?How was the crisis resolved at last ?

Belinda lived in a Little white House along with pets Ink the kitten, Blink the mouse ,Mustard the dog and Custard the dragon. One day ,out of nowhere appeared a pirate . Belinda saw him climbing the window. The pirate looked very dangerous with pistol in both hands . Usually all the pets including Belinda were confident of their bravery except the dragon as he used to cry for a nice safe cage to hide. But now when the pirate spelled danger, all the pets leaving aside the Dragon fled away from the scene leaving Belinda alone. The dragon who was cowardly to everyone's surprise now became furious and started snorting like an engine. Clashing his tail with a clatter and clang he charged at the pirate just like Robin would at a worm. The pirate was puzzled and he was no match to the angry dragon and the dragon gobbled him completely. In this way Custard the dragon resolved the crisis .

3. Do you find the tale of Custard the Dragon a serious or a light hearted poem ? Give reasons in support of your answer.

The Tale of Custard the dragon at one level is a light hearted poem and a serious poem at another level. The characters in the poem display behavioural attributes contrary to their appearance as well as nature. It is humorous to see a huge dragon crying for a cage . In the end they lived together as a happy family . On the other hand ,the poet indirectly hints at the attitude of man through these pets .Some people like the pets boast of their lives without any valid reason while others keep feeling inferior about their life like the Dragon. Also the judgemental attitude of man can be perceived through the actions of Belinda and their pets about the Custard the dragon

4. Discuss some of the images used by the poet in the poem

The poet has aptly used many images in the poem to make reader clearly understand what actually they mean in the context of the poem. The mouth of the Dragon is compared to a fireplace. A fireplace is the place in a house where the sticks are burnt to keep oneself warm from cold climate. The nose is compared to a chimney showing how the nose of the dragon was fuming with smoke. Belinda was as barrel of bears. Bears are powerful animals. Barrel indicates container or the front tubular part of a gun. This shows that Belinda had the explosive power of many bears. Custard cried for a nice safe cage. Cage here signifies refuge or a safe place. Custard snorted like an engine. Custard angrily sprang into action like an engine on move. The image of Robin shows the way how it would charge at its prey.

5.. What is the major theme of the poem ?. Discuss.

It is said that a book should never be judged by seeing its cover. All the pets including Belinda fall into this folly of making quick judgements - as they see Custard cwardly , ridiculing the Dragon and calling it names. They continued to tease the dragon until the time of the arrival of the pirate. The so called powerful and brave pets of Belinda run away after seeing the pirate. The only creature who faces the pirate boldly is the Dragon. The dragon charges at him angrily and gobbles up the pirate completely. Immediately the pets and Belinda run towards the dragon to celebrate the success. Now they have come to realise the real strength of the Dragon.

#### Answer key MCQ

1)D	11) B	21) B
2)C	12) D	22) A
3)B	13)C	23) C
4)B	14)B	24) D
5)C	15)B	
6)A	16)C	
7)A	17)A	
8)C	18)D	
9)A	19)C	
10)D	20)D	

---

## FOOTPRINTS WITHOUT FEET

### THE MAKING OF A SCIENTIST

#### **About the Author**

ROBERT W. PETERSON

Robert W. Peterson (1925 Warren, Pennsylvania –February 11, 2006) was an American newspaper writer who later became a freelance author of magazine articles and books.

He was a writer and editor with the old New York World-Telegram newspaper, which folded in 1966. Peterson died of lung cancer on February 11, 2006, in Salisbury, Pennsylvania.

#### **About Richard Ebright**

Richard H. Ebright is an American molecular biologist. He is the Board of Governors Professor of Chemistry and Chemical Biology at Rutgers University and Laboratory Director at the Waksman Institute of Microbiology.

Richard H. Ebright was born on 11 June 1959 to Richard Jerome Ebright and Jacqueline Katherine Ebright. His father died when he was in third grade. He grew up north of Reading, Pennsylvania.

In 1994 Ebright was awarded the American Society of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology Schering-Plough Award for his research on transcription activation. Ebright has opposed the proliferation of laboratories working on biological weapons agents [22] and has supported the strengthening of biosafety and biosecurity measures to reduce risks of release of biological weapons.

#### **BACK GROUND OF THE STORY**

The Making of a Scientist' is an article about the leading scientist Richard Ebright. He was a curious child right from the early years of his life. His curiosity was further ignited by his mother who encouraged his experiments and gave him a book named 'The Travels of Monarch X'. He started collecting butterflies in his childhood and by the time he was in second grade, he had already gathered all the 25 species found in his hometown

The book that his mother gave him became a turning point in his life and introduced him to the world of science. He experienced the real science in county science fair and although

he did not win, he got a very valuable lesson- that to win something he needs to do something extraordinary.

This realisation led Richard towards his discovery of an unknown insect hormone which inspired him to propose a new theory on the lives of cells. He tried to find the purpose of the tiny golden spots on the back of monarch pupa. This project won him a first place in a county science fair and a chance to work in Walter Reed Army Institute of research.

### **KEY-POINTS OF THE CHAPTER**

Ebright grew up North of Reading, Pennsylvania. He was the only child and according to him “There wasn’t much I could do there,” except for one thing –to collect things.

Beginning in kindergarten, Ebright collected butterflies with the same determination that has marked all his activities. He also collected rocks, fossils, and coins. He became an eager astronomer, too, sometimes star-gazing all night.

His mother was his only companion ‘until he started school’. She and her son spent almost every evening at the dining room table. She found work for him –not physical but learning things and he wanted to learn.

By the time he was in the second grade, Ebright had collected all twenty-five species of butterflies found around his hometown.

One day his mother got him a children’s book called “The Travels of Monarch X.” That book, which told how monarch butterflies migrate to Central America opened the world of science to the eager lad. The book put him to task for some real-life experiments.

Then in the seventh grade he got a hint of what real science is when he entered a county science fair — and lost. He realised the winners had tried to do real experiments, not simply make a neat display.

This realisation set him to look for a ‘real experiment’. He wrote to Dr Urquhart for ideas, and back came a stack of suggestions for experiments.

For his eighth-grade project, Ebright tried to find the cause of a viral disease that kills nearly all monarch caterpillars every few years. Assuming that the disease might be carried by a beetle, he tried raising caterpillars in the presence of beetles.

The next year his science fair project was testing the theory that viceroy butterflies copy monarchs. This project was placed first in the zoology division and third overall in the county science fair.

Ebright also became a champion debater and public speaker and a good canoeist and all-around outdoors-person. He is also an expert photographer, particularly of nature and scientific exhibits.

Ebright's first-rate mind, his curiosity, and his competitive spirit, the blend of these made him emerge a winner.

### **MESSAGE**

The incredible account of Richard Ebright and his making into a scientist who did wonders in the field of science gives a great message to young learners. The account tells us the importance of a keen and intelligent observation. These are the desired qualities of a successful person. The role of Enright's mother confirms the fact that curiosity should never be curbed or discouraged. Finding logical answers to queries goes a long way to develop a scientific way of thinking and problem solving. The correct process of learning starts early with keen observation, passes through analysis and comes to a rational conclusion.

Ebright's initial failure at the county science fair, his realisation about real experiments and his success; all these express that failure is a stepping stone to success and the key to every success is the competitive spirit in its right form.

### **SIGNIFICANCE OF THE TITLE**

A Scientist attempts to explain everything about the natural world. He does that by using the scientific method. The scientific method focuses on making observations, finding ways of explaining those observations that remain consistent, and then testing those ideas. When an idea is shown to not be true, new ideas are presented and tested. Science continually challenges what we believe to be true, collecting new data and making sure it's consistent with what we believe.

When we put the story 'The Making of a Scientist' on test, keeping in mind the above factors regarding the scientists and their qualities, we find that the incidents in the story justify all the mentioned points. Ebright's journey right from his childhood, his interests, his experiments at county Science Fair, his initial failures, his competitive spirit, his curiosity each and every observation .... curiosity.... experimentation.... conclusion. All these ingredients go into the making of a scientist and that is what the story is all about and hence the title is the most appropriate one.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

(2 marks)

1. What rare achievement did Richard manage at the age of twenty two?

Richard wrote an article with his friend about a theory on how cells work. The article was published in the scientific journal, 'Proceedings of the National Academy of Science'. It was the first time this important scientific journal had ever published the work of college students.

2. Why did viceroy butterflies copy monarchs?

Monarchs did not taste good to birds. Viceroys, on the other hand, did taste good to birds. So, the more they look like Monarchs, the less likely they are to become a bird's dinner. So the viceroy butterflies copied monarchs.

3. What was the common belief about the twelve tiny gold spots on a Monarch pupa? What is its actual purpose?

The twelve tiny gold spots on a monarch pupa were believed to be just ornamental. The actual purpose of these tiny gold spots is to produce a hormone necessary for the butterfly's full development.

4. What lesson did Ebright learn when he did not win anything at a science fair?

Ebright learnt that just a neat display is not a scientific achievement. To win at a science fair, he'll have to do real experiments.

5. What experiments and projects did Ebright undertake as a school student?

Ebright tried to find the cause of a viral disease that kills nearly all monarch caterpillars every few years. After that he worked on the theory that viceroy butterflies copy monarchs. In his second year in high school Ebright began the research that led to his discovery of an unknown insect hormone. Indirectly, it also led to his new theory on the life of cells.

6. What other interests, besides Science, did Richard Ebright pursue? What opinion did Mr. Weiherer, his social studies teacher, have about Ebright?

Other than Science, Richard Ebright was interested in collecting rocks, coins and fossils and was also interested in star-gazing and astronomy. He was also a good debater, canoeist and expert photographer. Mr. Weiherer felt that Richard was not only interested in his experiments but also kept his mind open for other things and put in that extra effort to attain success.

7. What are the essential qualities of becoming a scientist according to Ebright's teacher? According to Ebright's teacher, the essential qualities of becoming a scientist are to have a first rate mind, and have a lot of curiosity. Along with that, the person should have the zeal to excel and the wish to become the best.

8. Mention any two of Ebright's contributions to the world of science.

Ebright discovered a hormone that was necessary for the growth of a butterfly. His other important contribution proved to be his study of how cells read their DNA.

9. Who was Richard A. Weiherer? How did he help Richard Ebright?

Richard A. Weiherer was Richard Ebright's social studies teacher and adviser to the debating and Model United Nations Club. He helped Ebright a lot by helping him open his mind to new ideas.

10. How can Ebright's theory of cell life be a revolution in the medical field if it is proved right?

Ebright identified the chemical structure of the gold spot hormone and found that cells can read the blueprints of its DNA. To further test his theory, he began doing experiments. If it proves correct it will be a big leap towards understanding the process of life. It might lead to new ideas for preventing certain types of cancer and diseases.

### **(3 marks)**

11. How did a book become a turning point in Richard Ebright's life?

The butterfly collection was a hobby for Richard Ebright. He had gathered all twenty-five species of butterflies found in his hometown by the time he was in second grade. His butterfly collection would have come to an end at this point if his mother hadn't bought him a book called "The Travels of Monarch X". This book informed him of the monarch butterfly's migration to Central America. This book piqued his interest in Monarch butterflies while also introducing him to the realm of science. This proved to be a watershed moment in Richard Ebright's life. He started raising Monarch butterflies in his basement and studying them at various stages of life.

12. What were the factors which contributed in making Ebright a scientist?

Richard Ebright has some innate character traits that are the pre-requisites for the making of a scientist. He had, besides an intelligent mind, the curiosity to seek information, keen observing powers, perseverance, patience as well as self-discipline, which are the basic requirements for any scientific research. And the credit also goes to his mother for recognizing his inclinations and curiosity. She not only encouraged and supported him, but also provided the required stimulus through books and other materials.

13. How did Richard's mother help him to become a scientist?

Richard's mother was a vigilant parent who keenly observed her child, identified his interests and inclinations and channelized his energies in the right direction. She very deftly kept him occupied with learning activities which was a constructive use of the leisure time. She took him on trips, bought him telescopes, microscopes, cameras, mounting materials and other equipment. She bought him books to kindle his curiosity and thus provided the impetus towards scientific interests. She thereby played a significant role in 'the Making of a Scientist'.

**14. When and how did Richard Ebright get a hint of what real science is?**

Richard Ebright was in the seventh grade when he got a hint of what real science was. Actually, he entered a county science fair — and lost. He didn't get anything while everybody else had won. It was a very sad feeling for young Ebright. His entry was slides of frog tissues. He showed them under a microscope. He realised that the winners had tried to do real experiments. On the other hand, he failed because he simply made a neat display.

**15. What lesson did Richard Ebright learn when he didn't win anything at the County Science Fair?**

Richard Ebright was in the seventh grade when he sent his first project in the County Science Fair. Everybody else had won something. But he returned empty-handed. It was really a sad experience for him. But his loss taught him an important lesson in life. He realised that to be a winner he would have to do real experiments. His project of merely showing slides of frog tissues under a microscope didn't click. He should have done real experiments and that is what real science is all about.

**16. How did Ebright's house's basement become home to thousands of monarch butterflies?**

**At the end of the book, 'The Travels of Monarch X', the readers were invited to help study butterfly migrations. Ebright, who found interest in this, decided to work on it. He realised that it was not possible to chase the butterflies one by one. So he decided to raise a flock of butterflies in the basement of his house. He caught a female monarch, took her eggs and raised them. Then he tagged the butterflies and let them go. Thus for several years his basement was home to monarchs in different stages of development.**

**17. What are the qualities that go into the making of a scientist?**

A sharp mind, curiosity, and the will to succeed for the right reasons, according to the author, are three qualities that go into being a scientist. Richard Ebright was an exceptionally bright student. He was a skilled debater, public speaker, canoeist, and photographer, among other things. He was always willing to go above and above. He was fiercely competitive but in a good manner. From the outset, he had a keen interest and a smart mind, and it was this curiosity that led him to his cell-life idea.

18. What other interests besides Science, did Richard Ebright pursue? What opinion did Mr. Weiherer, his social studies teacher, have about Ebright?

Other than Science, Richard Ebright was interested in collecting rocks, coins and fossils and was also interested in star gazing and astronomy. He was also a good debater, canoeist and expert photographer. Mr Weiherer felt that Richard not only was interested in experiments but also kept his mind open for other things and put in that extra effort to attain success.

19. Which project of Ebright won first prize in the county science fair?

Ebright didn't win anything at his first science fair, thereby realizing that actual experiments alone worked. Later, he started winning prizes. Ebright with his scientist friend first built a device that showed that the tiny gold spots on a monarch pupa were producing a hormone necessary for the butterfly's full development. This project won the first prize in the county science fair and third prize in zoology in the international science fair.

20. Why and where did Richard Ebright send the tagged butterflies?

At the end of the book, 'The Travels of Monarch X', readers were invited to help study monarch butterflies' migration. They were asked to tag butterflies for research by Dr.Urquhart. Soon, Richard Ebright was attaching light adhesive tags to the wings of monarch butterflies. He used to send them to Dr. Urquhart for his research work.

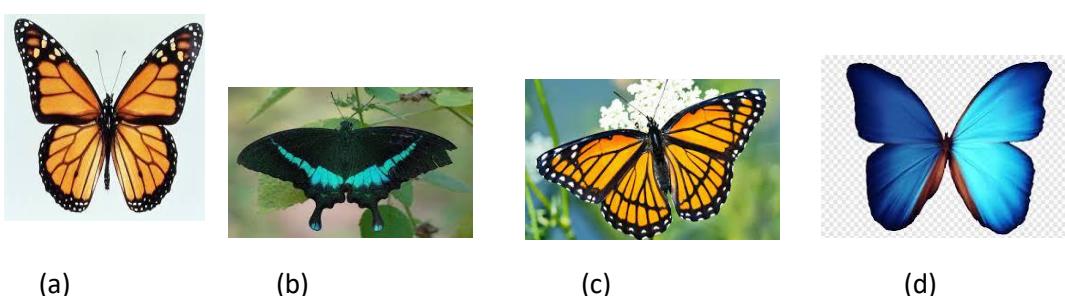
### **EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS**

For his eighth grade project, Ebright tried to find the cause of a viral disease that kills nearly all monarch caterpillars every few years. Ebright thought the disease might be carried by a beetle. He tried raising caterpillars in the presence of beetles. "I didn't get any real results," he said. "But I went ahead and showed that I had tried the experiment. This time I won."

The next year his science fair project was testing the theory that viceroy butterflies copy monarchs. The theory was that viceroys look like monarchs because monarchs don't taste good

to birds. Viceroy butterflies, on the other hand, do taste good to birds, so the more they look like monarchs, the less likely they are to become a bird's dinner.

1. Why do birds ignore monarch butterflies?
  - (a) Monarch butterflies look like viceroy butterflies.
  - (b) Birds are scared of monarch butterflies.
  - (c) Birds don't like the taste of monarch butterflies
  - (d) All are correct.
  
2. Below you can find pictures of monarch, viceroy, Brush-footed and snout butterflies. Looking at the pictures try to identify the monarch butterfly.



- (a) a or b
- (b) b
- (c) a or c
- (d) d or c

3. Which of the following statements is not true?
  - (a) Ebright's topic in the science fair was to prove that viceroy butterflies copy monarch butterflies
  - (b) Monarch butterflies are less likely to become a bird's dinner.
  - (c) Viceroy butterflies tasted good to birds.
  - (d) A virus killed monarch caterpillars every few years.
  
4. Ebright didn't get any real result to prove that \_\_\_\_\_
  - (a) Viceroy butterflies copy monarchs
  - (b) The disease that killed monarch caterpillars was carried by beetles.
  - (c) Caterpillars can be raised in the presence of beetles.
  - (d) Monarchs don't taste good to birds.

5. The topic for Ebright's eighth grade project was
  - (a) To prove that the death of monarch caterpillars is due to a beetle.
  - (b) Birds did not eat viceroy butterflies due to the presence of a hormone in its body.
  - (c) Viceroys look like monarchs because monarchs don't taste good to birds.
  - (d) To find the cause of a viral disease that affected monarch caterpillars.

1.c

2. c

3.a

4.b

5. d

"Richard would always give that extra effort," Mr. Weiherer said. "What pleased me was, here was the person who put in three or four hours at night doing debate research besides doing all his research with butterflies and his other interests.

"Richard was competitive," Mr. Weiherer continued, "but not in a bad sense." He explained, "Richard wasn't interested in winning for winning's sake or winning to get a prize. Rather, he was winning because he wanted to do the best job he could. For the right reasons, he wants to be the best.

1. "Richard was competitive, but in the right way" This statement suggests that
  - (a) Richard was always ready to put in a lot of effort to become successful.
  - (b) Richard's success is the result of all his hard work.
  - (c) Richard always wanted to be successful and was ready to work hard for it.
  - (d) Richard never allowed others to be successful.
2. Which of the following statement is not true?
  - (a) Richard was always ready to put in that extra effort to whatever he did.
  - (b) Richard was competitive.
  - (c) He always wanted to do the best job he could.
  - (d) Richard always made sure that he received prize for all the competitions.
3. What pleased Mr. Weiherer?
  - (a) Richard was highly competitive.
  - (b) Richard would always put in that extra effort.

- (c) Richard would spend hours at night doing debate research besides his research with butterflies.
- (d) He always wanted to do the best.

4. Assertion: Richard wasn't interested in winning for winning's sake  
Reason: He wanted to do the best job he could.

- (a) A is true; R is false
- (b) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A and R are False.
- (d) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A

5. Which word can substitute the word 'pleased' in the extract?

- (a) Delighted
- (b) Wrapped
- (c) Entertained
- (d) Agreed

Answers.

- 1. c
- 2. d
- 3.c
- 4.b
- 5. a

Then in the seventh grade he got a hint of what real science is when he entered a county science fair – and lost. “It was really a sad feeling to sit there and not get anything while everybody else had won something,” Ebright said. His entry was slides of frog tissues, which he showed under a microscope. He realized the winners had tried to do real experiments, not simply make a neat display.

Already the competitive spirit that drives Richard Ebright was appearing. “I knew that for the next year’s fair I would have to do a real experiment,” he said. “The subject I knew most about was the insect work I’d been doing in the past several years.”

1. What was Ebright’s entry in the county science fair?

- (a) He did not present anything.
- (b) A work on insects.

(c) Slides of frog tissues.  
(d) Monarch butterflies.

2. Which of the following is not true according to the given extract?

(a) Richard won the County science fair.  
(b) He competed in the county science fair when he was in the seventh grade.  
(c) Richard was the only person who did not get any prize in the fair.  
(d) Richard did not do any real experiment in the science fair.

q

3. Assertion: Richard did not win the county science fair.  
Reason: He made a neat display of frog tissues

(a) A is true; R is false  
(b) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A  
(c) A and R are False.  
(d) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A

4. What led him to the realisation of real science?

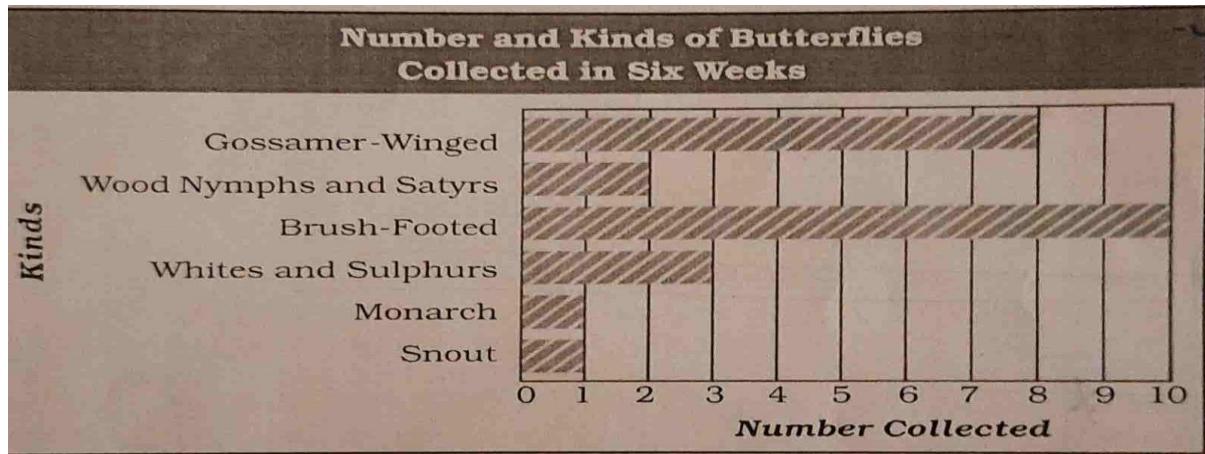
(a) His losing the county science fair  
(b) His realization of the reason behind losing the fair  
(c) His realization that frog tissues should not be used in science fairs  
(d) None of the above

5. Which word aptly substitutes ‘display’ in the passage?

(a) Show  
(b) Presentation  
(c) Demonstration  
(d) Exhibit

#### Answers

1. c
- 2.a
- 3.b
- 4.b
- 5.d



The above graph shows the kind and number of butterflies collected by Richard Ebright.

Observe the graph carefully and answer the following questions.

1. How many kinds of butterflies were caught by Richard?
  - (a) 5
  - (b) 6
  - (c) 7
  - (d) 8
  
2. Which butterfly did he collect the most?
  - (a) Gossamer-winged
  - (b) Wood nymphs
  - (c) Brush footed
  - (d) Monarch
  
3. How many Gossamer-Winged butterflies did he collect in 6 weeks?
  - (a) 5
  - (b) 7
  - (c) 8
  - (d) Data not available
  
4. The least number of butterflies collected were of which type?
  - (a) Satyrs and wood nymphs
  - (b) Monarch
  - (c) Snout
  - (d) Both b and c

5. After 6 weeks how many butterflies were there in his collection?

- (a) 25
- (b) 20
- (c) 22
- (d) 21

#### Answers

- 1.d
- 2.c
- 3.c
- 4.d
- 5.a

In his senior year, he went a step further. He grew cells from a monarch's wing in a culture and showed that the cells would divide and develop into normal butterfly wing scales only if they were fed the hormone from their gold spots. That project won first place for Zoology at the international fair. He spent the summer after graduation doing further work at the army laboratory and at the laboratory of the US department of Agriculture.

The following summer, after his freshman year at Harvard University, Ebright went back to the laboratory of the department of Agriculture and did more work on the hormone from the gold spots. Using the laboratory's sophisticated instruments, he was able to identify the hormone's chemical structure.

1. What did Ebright discover in his senior year of school?

- (a) The cells would divide and develop into normal butterfly.
- (b) The cells would divide and develop into normal butterfly wing scale
- (c) The cells would divide and develop into normal butterfly wing scales only if fed the hormone from their gold spot.
- (d) None of the above

2. Which project won first place for Zoology at the international fair?

- (a) The project which showed the importance of hormone present in the gold spot for the development of the butterfly.
- (b) the project that focused on the division of cells.

- (c) The project showing the growth of a butterfly
- (d) the project which showed the growth of monarch butterflies.

3. Where did Richard join after completing his graduation?

- (a) Oxford University
- (b) Harvard University
- (c) Cambridge University
- (d) London University of Research

4. What does the word 'freshman' mean?

- (a) a student in his first year at college.
- (b) a student lost in a strange town.
- (c) a student who has won several prizes
- (d) a student with huge fan followers.

5. Find another term for 'advanced' from the passage.

- (a) structure
- (b) fair
- (c) project
- (d) sophisticated

#### Answers

- 1. c
- 2.a
- 3.b
- 4.a
- 5.d

#### **LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**Question 1.**

“Every adversity, every failure, every heartache carries with it the seed of an equal or greater benefit.”- Elucidate with reference to Richard Ebright's experience of being motivated to become a real scientist on not winning anything at the Science Fair.

OR

How did Ebright's not winning anything at the Science fair motivate him to become a bright scientist?

OR

‘Failure is the stepping stone to success.’ Elucidate with reference to Richard Ebright.

**Answer:**

Failure is something which is dreaded by every one of us. We try to avoid it with all our might. But the simple truth is, no great success was ever achieved without failure. It may be one epic failure or a series of failures. But, whether we like it or not, failure is a necessary stepping stone to achieving our dreams. This can be well elucidated with the example of Richard Ebright- the scientist in the lesson " The Making of a Scientist".

When Ebright was in the seventh grade, he participated in a county science fair. His entry was slides of frog tissues, shown under a microscope. He lost the competition. He felt really sad when he just sat there and others won many prizes. That was the time of motivation. A sense of real Science entered him and he realised that winners had to try to do real experiments and not just a simple neat display. The competitive spirit started entering him and he thought of conducting experiments. Next year his experiment on Viceroy's copying Monarchs came first in the zoology division and overall third. The year after that he found out an unknown insect hormone which led him to his new theory on the life of cells. Ebright's story, demonstrates that defeat is the stepping stone of success. Not winning anything at the science fair encouraged him greatly to conduct real experiments which molded him into a full blown scientist.

**Question 2.**

‘The development of a child is guaranteed in his curiosity to discover the cause behind each and every incident. "How do you think this quality helped Richard Ebright to become a great scientist?

OR

Richard Ebright was a curious child, observing the phenomena around him keenly and these traits contributed to his evolution into a scientist. Do you think such qualities should be encouraged in children?

**Answer:**

Richard had a driving curiosity and bright mind right from his childhood. He used to observe and collect butterflies of every species. He once displayed a slide of frog tissues under a microscope as his experiment in a Science County Fair. . He lost in that competition. After that he realised that only true experiments help one in succeeding. He was an exceptional child with rare qualities of intelligent observation and keen interest in the nature of things. The traits of his successful career were nurtured and honed during his childhood itself. These qualities are definitely desirable in every child and curiosity should never be curbed or discouraged. Curiosity in children is an appetite for knowledge. One reason why children abandon themselves to silly things and trifle away their life insipidly is because they find their curiosity balked and their inquiries neglected. Providing logical answers to the queries goes a long way to develop a scientific way of thinking and problem solving. Children learn to analyse the things and come to logical conclusions and this is indeed the correct learning procedure. The learning environment must reflect a classroom and outer space that inspire a sense of wanting to investigate, to find out and to explore.

**Question 3**

Richard's mother had a great influence on him. Discuss.

Or

Discuss the role of Ebright's mother in making him a scientist.

**Answer:** Mother's love is the fuel that enables the normal man to do the impossible. The role of Richard's mother in molding him into a great scientist is immense. She was a single parent and had her entire focus upon Richard. She was his only friend until he started school. At night they just did things together.

She and her son spent almost every evening at the dining room table. If he didn't have things to do, she found work for him — not physical work, but learning things. He enjoyed doing them. She took him on trips, bought him telescopes, microscopes, cameras, mounting materials, and other equipment and helped him in many other ways.

She was his only companion for a long time. It was his mother who got him the book The Travels of Monarch X. This book opened the world of science for Richard. She also wrote to Dr. Urquhart to guide her son. The scientist helped Richard and guided him. Thus, his mother actually shaped him into an extraordinary scientist.

**Question 4**

Richard Ebright displayed a well-rounded personality. Do you agree? Elucidate in the context of the given text.

Answer: Richard's genius was obvious by the time he was in his second grade. He managed to collect all twenty-five species of butterflies around his hometown and classify them. He also loved to collect coins, fossils and rocks. Science was not his only passion. He was an active member of his schools oratory club and model United Nations club and was an effective debater and a public speaker. He loved photography as well.

He was an enthusiastic canoeist and an all-around outdoors person. Learning was easy for him. So he found it simple to devote time and energy to many other interests. He became a champion in whatever he did. He believed in the spirit of competition to win. But, he did not wish to defeat others just to win. He wanted to win to do his best. Thus, he displayed a well-founded personality.

### **Question 5**

Ebright's study of monarch pupas had a far reaching impact. Elaborate.

Answer: For a long time the scientific community had regarded the bright spots on a monarch pupa as purely ornamental. But Dr. Urquhart did not believe it. Nor did Richard. He started his experiments on the monarch pupa. He built a device with the help of a friend. This led to the discovery of a hormone. Richard proved that the hormone was necessary for the growth of the butterfly. This discovery got him many honors. Also, it led to another important study. He began working on how cells read their DNA. DNA is the carrier of heredity and is called the blueprint of life. His theory could find answers to the cure of many types of cancers and diseases.

### **THE NECKLACE**

**Guy De Maupassant**

### **Summary**

Matilda was a young and pretty lady. She was from a family of clerks. She was simple and had married a petty office clerk. She dared not to visit her friends' house which was richly furnished. One day Mr. Loisel and Mme. Loisel got invitation to dinner from the Minister of Public Instruction. The husband got elated to get the invitation but the wife got irritated because she didn't have proper clothes and jewellery to wear. Her husband gave her money to buy a dress. At her husband's suggestion, Mme. Loisel went to Mme Forestier's house. She was ready to lend her entire jewellery. However she borrowed only the diamond necklace.

Mme Loisel danced at the ball with enthusiasm. She looked pretty; it made her swell with joy. They hired a carriage and reached home instantly she noticed that the necklace was missing. They had looked all around but they didn't find it. Then Mr. Loisel found a chaplet of diamonds in a shop. It was exactly like the lost necklace, they bought it for thirty six thousand francs. They handed the jewel to Mme Forestier but she did not open it.

Loisel sent away the maid and lived in rented room in an attic. They led quite humble and poor life for a few years. Thus they repaid their loan. One day Mrs. Loisel happened to meet Mme Forestier while they were taking a walk. Mme Forestier revealed that her false necklace was only worth five hundred francs.

### **VSAQs (1 mark each)**

- 1) Who is the author of the story “The Necklace”?
  - a) HG Wells
  - b) Robert W. Peterson
  - c) Guy De Maupassant
  - d) Loisel
  
- 2) Why did Matilda utter a cry?
  - a) Seeing other ladies wrapping themselves in fur.
  - b) Poverty
  - c) The necklace was not to be seen when she reached home.
  - d) None of the above
  
- 3) How much was the necklace actually worth?
  - a) forty thousand Francs

b) thirty six thousand Francs  
c) five hundred Francs  
d) none of the above

4) "She suffered incessantly, feeling herself born for all delicacies and luxuries." Which word does 'delicacies' NOT correspond to?

a) Etherealness  
b) Elegance  
c) Exquisiteness  
d) Robustness

5) Assertion (A): Mme Forestier was touched and took both the hands of Matilda.  
Reason(R): She was touched by Matilda's plight which could have been avoided if only Matilda had told the truth.

a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
b) Both A and R are true and R is not the correct explanation of A.  
c) A is true but R is false.  
d) A is false but R is true.

6) Assertion (A): Matilda threw the letter away  
Reason(R): She had no jewellery to wear.

a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
b) Both A and R are true and R is not the correct explanation of A.  
c) A is true but R is false.  
d) A is false but R is true.

7) What all did Mme and M Loisel do to repay?

a) sent away the maid  
b) change their lodgings  
c) husband working the evenings and nights too  
d) all of these

**Answers:**

- 1) c) Guy De Maupassant
- 2) c) The necklace was not to be seen when she reached home.
- 3) c) five hundred Francs
- 4) d) Robustness

- 5) a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- 6) a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- 7) d) all of these

8) Who was Matilda?

Ans: Matilda was a young, pretty lady born in a family of clerks

9) Whom did she married?

Ans: She married with Mr. Loisel, who was a very simple man.

10) What job did Mr. Loisel do?

Ans: Mr. Loisel was a clerk in the office of the Board of Education.

11) What kind of a person her husband is?

Ans: Her husband is a very simple-hearted person. He is an ordinary person. He is a caring husband. He wants to see Mme. Loisel happy.

12) How did Matilda react when she saw the invitation card?

Ans: Matilda reacted in a very bad manner, instead of being happy, she got very angry to see the invitation card.

13) How did M. Loisel afford for the new dress?

Ans: M. Loisel gave four hundred francs to Matilda, which he had saved for the gun.

14) What was the advice given by M. Loisel to Matilda when she complained about not having suitable jewellery?

Ans: M. Loisel advised Matilda to wear natural flowers when she complained about not having suitable jewellery.

15) Who was the friend of Matilda?

Ans: Mme Forestier was the friend of Matilda. She was very rich and had many jewels.

16) How did Matilda enjoyed the party?

Ans: Matilda enjoyed the party with great pleasure. She danced with enthusiasm and intoxicated, thinking of nothing but all that admiration.

17) Why did Matilda get upset after the party?

Ans: Matilda got upset after the party, because she had lost her friend's necklace.

18) What had Matilda's husband saved the money for?

Ans: Matilda's husband had saved a good amount of money to buy a gun for him.

19) Who are the protagonists of the story "The Necklace"?

Ans: Mme and M. Loisel are the protagonists of the story "The Necklace"

20) How did Matilda solve her problem of jewellery?

Ans: Matilda solved her problem of jewellery by borrowing a necklace from her friend Mme. Forestier.

### **SAQs (2 marks and 3 marks questions)**

1) What was Loisel's reaction to his wife's desire for a new dress?

Ans: The Loisels had been invited to a party at the minister's residence. When Matilda told her husband that she wanted a new dress to wear, first of all he asked her to wear whatever she possessed. When she got angry and refused to go to the party at all, he finally agreed to let her buy a new one.

2) Do you think M. Loisel had an enjoyable evening at the ball? Give reasons for your answer.

Ans: I think M. Loisel didn't enjoy much at the ball. In fact, he was not much interested in such parties. He had come there for the sake of his wife's happiness. So when his wife was dancing with enthusiasm, intoxicated with pleasure, he waited for her (but without disturbing her) half asleep in one of the little salons since midnight.

3) How did Mme and M Loisel react when they realised that the necklace had been lost?

Ans: As soon as they realized that the necklace had been lost, their short-lived happiness degenerated into shock of the worst nightmare. Matilda uttered a cry. Loisel, already half undressed, arose in dismay and went immediately on foot in search of necklace.

4) Why was Matilda sad after the ball?

Ans: The night of the ball had been the realization of a long cherished dream for Matilda, when she was the focus of all the attention and every eye admired her. But the happiness was short-lived and degenerated into shock of the worst nightmare when she discovered that the necklace was missing from her attire. Her mind was ridden with forebodings of how she would face Mme Forestier and pay up for the loss.

5) What was the cause of Matilda's ruin?

Ans: Her own discontentment was the cause of her ruin. She always felt that she had been born for better things. So her desires to be rich or distinguished or of becoming known were never fulfilled which caused her to be unhappy and ruined.

6) What changes came into the life of the Loisel after borrowing money

Ans: After borrowing money, a lot of changes came in the life of the Loisel. They had to do away with the maid and Matilda had to do all the household chores. She had to carry down the refuse to the street and carry water upstairs. She had to do all the shopping from the market after a lot of haggling. Her husband also had to work hard. He worked in the evenings and sometimes even at night. Thus, their life changed drastically.

7) Why could Mrs. Forestier not recognize her friend Matilda at the end of the story?

Ans: Matilda had to work very hard to lead her life. She had become a strong, hard woman, the crude woman of the household. In fact she had started looking old. One Sunday evening, when she was taking a walk in the Champs Elysees, she met Mrs. Forestier who still looked young and pretty. As Matilda had started looking old and haggard, she couldn't be recognized by her.

8) What would Matilda often dream of?

Ans: Matilda would often dream of all the delicacies, luxuries, elegant dinners, marvellous dishes, rich silver, beautiful dresses, jewels, adoration and a life of glory. She would escape into her dreams from the dullness of her very humble existence.

9) What is the moral of the story 'The Necklace'?

Ans: The moral of the story is that we should not be greedy. We should be satisfied with whatever we have. Our honesty is the best policy. We should be content with what life gives us.

10) How did Mme. Loisel then know the life of necessity?

Ans: To pay the debt of eighteen thousand francs, Loisel let go of their decent living. They lived in impoverished neighborhood. Matilda had to cook, clean, wash, mend, bring water and bargain with the butcher and grocer. Her husband worked day and night to save every sou.

11) Do you think Mme Loisel had an enjoyable evening at the ball? Give reasons for your answer.

Ans: Mme. Loisel was the center of attention at the ball. Her beauty, her grace, her joy and the gorgeous smile captivated all. Men sought to be presented to her. She danced happily at her conquest of all.

12) Why was Matilda's friend astonished to see her at the end of the story? Or Why did Jeanne not recognize her friend, Matilda?

Ans: Jeanne, Matilda's friend, could not recognize her as she seemed an old and worn out poor woman. Matilda was no longer her former beautiful and Joyous self.

13) Why was Matilda always unhappy?

Ans: Matilda was always unhappy because she had been born into a simple family of clerks and married also to a clerk. Thus, her desires to be rich or distinguished or of becoming known were never fulfilled which caused her to be unhappy.

14) Why did Matilda not want to see her rich friends?

Ans: Matilda did not want to see her rich friends because she suffered from inferiority complex. She was married to a simple clerk; whereas her friends were rich and full of money power.

15) How did they replace the necklace?

Ans: The necklace was of thirty six thousand francs from which Loisel possessed eighteen thousand francs and the rest money he lent from the lenders.

16) What did Matilda do to return the money to the lenders?

Ans: To pay the debt of eighteen thousand francs, Loisels let go of their decent living. Matilda had to cook, clean, wash, mend, bring water and bargain with the butcher and grocer.

17) What was the great shock that Mme Forestier gave to Matilda at last?

Ans: The great shock that Mme Forestier gave to Matilda was the necklace which she lent her was not original. It was not worth over five hundred francs.

18) What excuse did Loisels put up to explain the delay in returning the necklace?

Ans: Loisels had lost the necklace and needed time to find an identical one. Thus, Loisels wrote a letter to Mme Forestier with an excuse that the clasp of the necklace was broken and they needed time to get it repaired.

19) Comment on the use of irony in the text. Or How had sacrifice of Mme Loisel been in vain?

Ans: The irony in the story is based on the fact that Mme and M Loisel spend ten years of toil and frugality paying for a necklace which turns out to be a cheap imitation.

20) What did Matilda and her husband do to discover the necklace?

Ans: They went to the police and to the cab offices, and put the advertisement in the newspapers, offering a reward. But they had not discovered anything

## Extract Based Questions

### Question 1.

One evening her husband returned elated bearing in his hand a large envelope. 'Here', he

said, “here is something for you.”

- (a) Why was the husband elated?
- (b) What was the reaction from ‘you’?
- (c) Find the word from the extract that means the same as ‘wrapper’.
- (d) What is the antonym of ‘elated’?
- (e) Name the characters mentioned in the given extract

**Answer:**

- (a) The husband was elated as he brought home an invitation to the Minister’s residence. He knew it would make his wife happy.
- (b) ‘You’ or his wife, unexpectedly, was not the least happy and she made her displeasure very obvious.
- (c) ‘Envelope’ means the same as ‘wrapper’ from the extract.
- (d) Its antonym is ‘sad’.
- (e) Mme and M Loisel are the characters mentioned in the extract.

**Question 2.**

He threw around her shoulders that modest wraps they had carried whose poverty clashed with the elegance of the ball costume. She wished to hurry away...

- (a) What precedes these lines?
- (b) Who is “She” mentioned in this extract?
- (c) ‘She’ wished to hurry away. Why?
- (d) Which word in the given extract is a synonym of ‘not expensive’?
- (e) Find the antonym of ‘affluence’ from the passage given.

**Answer:**

- (a) These lines follow Matilda’s success at the ball where she was idolised. Her beauty and elegance was praised by everyone.
- (b) She is Matilda.
- (c) She, “Matilda” did not wish to shatter the illusion of her grandeur that she had so successfully managed to convey others by putting on such a shabby wrap. So, she wished to hurry away to escape the notice of the rich women.
- (d) ‘Modest’ is the synonym of ‘not expensive’ from the extract.
- (e) Its antonym is ‘poverty’.

**Question 3.**

She learned the odious work of a kitchen... she seemed old now. She had become strong, hard woman, the crude woman of a poor household.

- (a) Who seemed old now?
- (b) What had made her ‘crude’?
- (c) Which word in the given extract is an antonym to ‘pleasant’?
- (d) What part of speech is ‘crude’ in the extract?

**Answer:**

- (a) Matilda seemed old now.
- (b) Ten long years of poverty, and a constant struggle and strife for survival had made her ‘crude’.
- (c) ‘Odious’ is the antonym of ‘pleasant’ in the extract.
- (d) It is an adjective.

**Question 4.**

Mme Forestier was touched and took both her hands as she replied, “Oh! My poor Matilda! Mine were false. They were not worth over five hundred francs.”

- (a) Why was Mme Forestier touched?
- (b) “Mine were false.” What does ‘mine’ refer to in these words?
- (c) Find the word from the extract that means same as ‘agitated’.
- (d) What is the opposite of ‘poor’?
- (e) What was the actual cost of the necklace she had lent?

**Answer:**

- (a) Mme Forestier was touched by Matilda’s plight which could have been avoided if only Matilda had told the truth.
- (b) ‘Mine’ refers to the diamond necklace that Mme Forestier had lent to Matilda.
- (c) ‘Touched’ means the same as ‘agitated’ from the extract.
- (d) Its opposite is ‘rich’.
- (e) The necklace was not worth over five hundred francs.

**Question 5.**

And she responded, “I am vexed not to have a jewel, nothing to adorn myself with. I shall have such a poverty-stricken look. I would prefer not to go to this party.” He replied, “You can wear some natural flowers. In this season they look very chic.”

- (a) Why was she vexed then?
- (b) Which party is she referring to?
- (c) Who is ‘she’ in the above lines?
- (d) Why did she not want to go to the party?
- (e) What was the advice given by M. Loisel to Matilda when she complained about not having suitable jewellery?

**Answer:**

- (a) She was vexed because she did not have any jewel to adorn herself with.
- (b) She is referring to the party hosted by The Minister of Public Instruction for which her husband got an invitation.
- (c) Matilda
- (d) She was grieved for her poverty-stricken look. She felt that she did not have a proper Party dress and a jewel for the party.
- (e) M. loisel advised Matilda to wear natural flowers.

**Long Answer Questions (5 Marks)**

1. Why did Matilda’s husband go out into the cold night, minutes after returning from the ball? Was he successful in his purpose?

Answer:

On returning from the ball, Matilda noticed that the necklace, which she had borrowed from Madame Forestier, was missing. They searched for the necklace everywhere. Matilda’s husband went out into the cold night searching for the lost necklace. He went on foot over the route, filed police complaint, enquired cab offices and even put an advertisement in

newspapers, offering a reward. But then, all his efforts went in vain. He was not able to find the lost necklace.

2.What did Loisel do to replace the necklace ?

Answer:

Loisel had to pay thirty six thousand Francs for the new necklace. To replace the lost necklace, Loisel used eighteen thousand francs which were set aside by Mr. Loisel's father. The remaining amount was borrowed from moneylenders. In order to repay the borrowed money they went without maid and Matilda did all the household chores whereas Mr. Loisel even worked overtime. In this way, they led a miserable life just to collect enough amount to replace the lost necklace.

3.What was the cause of Matilda's ruin? How could she have avoided it ?

OR

What could have happened to Matilda if she had confessed to her friend that she had lost her necklace?

Answer:

Matilda had borrowed a necklace from her friend Madame Forestier to wear in the party. It was a beautiful one and Matilda, a pretty woman, became the centre of attraction at the party. All this happiness was short-lived because on reaching home, she discovered that she had lost it. All her efforts to find it were in vain. She and her husband borrowed huge sums of money to replace the necklace and henceforth faced a miserable life. On the other hand, if she had confessed to her friend that she had lost the necklace and had apologized she might have saved her family from a lot of miseries as the necklace was not even worth five hundred francs in reality.

4.Why did Matilda change her lifestyle after the ball?

OR

What changes came into the life of the Loisel after the incident of borrowing the necklace?

Answer:

Matilda had been enjoying thoroughly at the ball and in the pleasure of the moment, she got careless and lost the necklace. All search was in vain and the expensive jewel (or so they thought) had to be replaced. The debt incurred was much beyond their capacity to pay and thus they had to make severe compromises in their lifestyle, foregoing every luxury. Matilda worked laboriously at the household chores while M. Loisel overworked at the office. Thus, they slogged for ten long years to pay up the loan.

5.How had Mme Loisel's sacrifice all been in vain ?

Answer:

The pleasure of looking pretty at the ball proved an expensive bargain for Matilda, as she lost the necklace borrowed from Mme Forestier. It took Loisel's ten long years to pay back the huge sum they borrowed to replace the lost necklace. Years later, when Matilda saw Mme Forestier, she disclosed the truth of the lost necklace. She was dumb-founded to discover that it was not a genuine piece of jewellery and had been worth just five hundred francs. All her sacrifices and comprises had been meaningless.

6.What is your opinion about M. Loisel as a husband ?

Answer:

M. Loisel was a loving husband beyond any doubt. He was aware of his wife's aspirations and so he thought that the invitation to the ball would please her and expressed no offence when she reacted negatively. Instead, he offered his savings to buy her an outfit, suited for the occasion. Even when Matilda lost the necklace, he cooperated at every step to make up for the loss and made the necessary compromises in his life without complaining.

7.The course of the Loisel's life changed due to the necklace. Comment.

Ans: It is true that the course of the Loisel's life changed due to the necklace. After the loss of the necklace , the Loisel's shifted to a cheap house .Mme. Loisel's started doing all work herself. She want to buy things. She haggled fees the last seen. She wore ordinary clothes her husband worker evenings. He copied at fine seems a page. This life of hard ships went on ten years.

8.A little confession would have changed the life of Matilda. Should we confess our mistakes courageously? Do you agree about above statement.

Ans:

Yes, a small mistake makes our life miserable and dark. People who are open-minded and speak the truth stay much happier. A little mistake made by Matilda changed her life completely. If Matilda had confessed that she had lost Madam Forestier's necklace, her life would have been different. Confession could have brought peace of mind. Matilda would have at once come to know that necklace is not a real but it is an imitation. Hard work which

Matilda put into repay the borrowed necklace could have been saved. We all get a very important message that we should not delay in admitting our mistake.

9. Our inability to accept our limitations may lead to an unhappy life. Analyze with reference to the story 'The Necklace'.

Ans:

We fail to recognise the situation in which we are placed but rather keep on grumbling. We become frustrated and want our life to be different. We should accept the life as it comes to us and should not keep on cribbing about unhappy circumstances. As we read the story 'The Necklace' we find that Matilda is not at all happy with her husband. She had wished her life to be luxurious. It is this frustration of hers which puts her in a fix and spoils rest of her life. She does not work for solution but rather complicates the situation for her.

## THE HACK DRIVER

### GIST

This story is about a junior assistant clerk. His job was to serve summons. As he hated this work, he thought about running away to his own home town, and become a lawyer right away. One day, he was asked to serve summons on a man, called Oliver Lutkins as he was a witness in a law suit. On reaching New Mullion, he found that a delivery man (hack driver) was willing to help him find the person in quarry. He would charge two dollars an hour for that work, as it would be very difficult to locate Lutkins. The hackman started talking to him and said that Lutkins never parted with his money. Wherever they went, he told the narrator to keep out of sight, while he enquired for Lutkins. They went to Fritz's where Lutkins played poker and from there to a barber and then a poolroom. They were not able to find Lutkins. In the afternoon, the narrator decided to buy lunch and offered to pay for the hack driver's lunch also. The driver got the lunch prepared by his wife and charged him half a dollar for it. Finally, the hack driver took him to Lutkin's house. When Lutkin's mother heard that they had come to serve summons

on her son, she seized an iron rod and marched on them. She also threatened to burn them if they did not go away. The narrator returned to his city. He was asked to go back and somehow serve summons on Lutkins. A man who knew Lutkins went with him. On reaching New Mullion, the narrator was shocked to find that the hack driver himself was Oliver Lutkins. Lutkins and his mother laughed at him. Feeling insulted and humiliated, the narrator served summons on Lutkins.

### **Multiple Choice Questions**

Q1- Who is the author of the story “The Hack Driver”?

- a. H G Wells
- b. Ruskin Bond
- c. Kamala Das
- d. Sinclair Lewis

Q.2 The narrator was sent to New Mullion as.....

- a. He was summoned by Oliver Lutkins
- b. He was a witness in a law case
- c. He had to serve sermons on Lutkins
- d. He had ignored all the letters

Q.3 The Village folk used to call the Hack Driver

- a. Lutkin Driver
- b. Oliver
- c. Magnuson
- d. Advocate

Q.4 Who was Oliver Lutkins?

- a. Fritz
- b. Swede
- c. Grey
- d. Bill

Q.5 The name Gustaff is of ..... Origin

- a. English
- b. German
- c. Russian

d. Swedish

Q.6 Who was said to be the most cheerful person in New Mullion according to the narrator ?

- a. The hack driver
- b. Gustaff
- c. Lutkin's mother
- d. Fritz

Q7.'I agreed to an identity that it was a pretty disrespectful treatment. This disrespectful treatment refers to

- a. The harassment by Lutkin's mother
- b. The absence of Oliver Lutkins
- c. Lutkin's mother laughing at them
- d. The ignorance of Lutkin's mother

Q.8 I hated this unpleasant work. The writer even considers fleeing to

- a. A countryside
- b. His hometown
- c. New mullion
- d. A big city

Q.9 Why did Lutkins pretend to be Bill Magnuson?

- a. because he did not want to accept the summons
- b. because he did not want to go home
- c. because he wanted to fool the narrator
- d. because he wanted to trap the narrator

Q.10 Given below are two statements marked as Assertion(A) and Reason(R) Read both the statements carefully and choose the correct alternative from the following

Assertion(A):The young lawyer hated his job.

Reason(R ):He had to go to dirty and shadowy places to serve sermons

- a. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- b. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c. A is true but R is false
- d. A is false but R is true

Q.11 Why were Lutkins and his mother laughing at the narrator at the end?

- a. Because the narrator was befooled by Lutkins.
- b. Because they were of jovial nature
- c. Because they were sharing jokes with each other
- d. None of the above

Q.12. What do you mean by legal briefs?

- a. Legal diaries carried by lawyers
- b. Notes pertaining to laws and constitutional acts
- c. Notes prepared by lawyers to argue in the court of law
- d. Notes pretrained by the culprit

Q.13 Given below are two statements marked as Assertion(A) and Reason(R) Read both the statements carefully and choose the correct alternative from the following

Assertion :The narrator was a young lawyer who became a junior Assistant Clerk to a magnificent law firm

Reason :He went to New Mullion as a Hack driver.

- a. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- b. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c. A is true but R is false
- d. A is false but R is true

Q.14 Could the narrator serve summons on Lutkins in his first visit

- a. Yes
- b. No

Q.15 Why was the chief angry at the narrator when returned without serving the summons?

- a. Because they needed Lutkins as an important eyewitness
- b. he thought the young lawyer will never come back
- c. He had heard from a friend how the narrator was befooled
- d. He wanted Lutkins to be thrown behind the bars

Q.16 On their way to meet Lutkin's mother, the Hack driver describes Lutkins mother to the narrator, as

- a. a very short and lovely lady of 6 feet height
- b. a very short fat lady of medium height
- c. a tall lady with beautiful eyes
- d. a nine feet tall and four feet thick quick lady

Q.17.Given below are some adjectives. Choose the ones which can be associated with Oliver Lutkins

1. Deceptive	2.Clever	3.short-tempered	4.friendly	5.cunning
6.jolly	7.quick-witted			

a. 1,2,4,6,7

b. 1,2,3,4

c. 2 and 3 only

d. 1,2,3 and 7

Q18. Given below are two statements marked as Assertion(A) and Reason(R) Read both the statements carefully and choose the correct alternative from the following

Assertion(A):The Narrator bargained the fare money to two dollars per hour

Reason(R ):They started the poker game.

- a. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- b. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c. A is true but R is false
- d. A is false but R is true

Q.19 But he was no more dishonest than I. The writer says this because .....

- a. He was being dishonest to Lutkin's
- b. He was charging the whole thing to his firm
- c. He was being dishonest to Bill
- d. He was more dishonest than Lutkins

Q20 How many times did the narrator visit New Mullion?

- a. 1
- b. 3
- c. 5
- d. 2

## ANSWER KEY

1.d.Sinclair Lewis

2.c.he had to serve a summons on Lutkins

3.c.Magnuson

4.d. Bill

5.c. Swedish

6.a The Hack Driver

7. c. Lutkin's mother laughing at them

8.b. Home town

9.a. As he did not want to accept the summons

10. a. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A

11.a. Because the narrator was befooled by Lutkins.

12.c. Notes prepared by lawyers to argue in the court of law

13.c. A is true but R is false

14.b. No

15 a. Because they needed Lutkins as an important eyewitness

16.d.

a nine feet tall and four feet thick quick lady

17.a.1,2,4,6,7

18.c. A is true but R is false

19. c. He was charging the whole thing to his firm

20.D.2

**1. Read the extracts to attempt the questions that follow:**

Fritz looked at me ,hiding behind Bill. He hesitated, and then admitted ,”Yes ,he was in here a little while ago .Guess he ‘s gone over to Gustaff’s to get a shave .” “Well, if he comes in,tell him I’m looking for him”.

We drove to Gustaff’s barber shop. Again Bill went in first and I lingered at the door. He asked not only the Swede but two customers if they had seen Lutkins. The Swede had not.

1.1 Fritz hesitation was on account of wanting to

- a. Take a moment to comprehend and fall in with the prank
- b. Understand what was being asked answer accordingly
- c. Pretend ignorance at the question asked ,to waste time

d. Confirm that it was him being addressed before replying

1.2. The narrator hovered near the door because he

- a. Wanted to drop the conversation
- b. Didn't trust Bill to enquire sternly
- c. Had been asked to remain there by Bill
- d. Found the interior too stuffy

1.3. Fritz is a..... name

- a. English
- b. German
- c. American
- d. Swedish

1.4. Pick out the word from the extract which ***means to stay somewhere or do something for longer than usual***

1.5. Who were there in Gustaff's Barber shop?

2. "Lutkins? I saw him around here about an hour ago. Hard fellow to catch though — always up to something or other. He's probably trying to start up a poker game in the back of Fritz's shop. I'll tell you, boy — is there any hurry about locating Lutkins?" "Yes. I want to catch the afternoon train back to the city." I was very important and secret about it.

~

2.1 "Lutkins? I saw him around here....." Whose words are these?

2.2 "Yes. I want to catch the afternoon train back to the city."?

Who says this to whom?

2.3. Why can't Lutkins be caught?

2.4. According to the speaker, where can Lutkins be?

2.5. What was the Narrator so particular about?

3. "I know Oliver's mother. She's a terror," Bill sighed. "I took a trunk out there for her once, and she almost took my skin off because I didn't treat it like a box of eggs. She's about nine feet tall and four feet thick and quick as a cat, and she sure can talk. I'll bet Oliver heard that

somebody's chasing him, and he's gone on there to hide behind his mother's skirts. Well, we'll try her. But you'd better let me do it, boy. You may be great at literature and law, but you haven't had real training in swearing." We drove into a poor farmyard; we were faced by an enormous and cheerful old woman. My guide bravely went up to her and said, "Remember me? I'm Bill Magnuson, the carter and hackman. I want to find your son, Oliver."

3.1. My guide bravely went up to her and said, "Remember me? I'm Bill Magnuson, the carter and hackman.

3.1a. For whom was this introduction made?

3.1.b. Who was the enormous and cheerful woman?

3.1.c. What was the hidden agenda behind these words?

3.2. Pick out the word which suggests the woman was so active and quick in her activities.

3.3. Was Lutkin's mother, a hard working woman?

## **ANSWER KEY**

**1.1A.** Take a moment to comprehend and fall in with the prank

1.2 c. Had been asked to remain there by Bill

1.3 b. German

1.4 lingered

1.5 The narrator saw Bill, Gustaff, and two customers inside the shop.

2.1 Bills' words/ Lutkin's words

2.2 The narrator says these to Lutkin

2.3 Hint: Hard fellow to catch though — always up to something or other.

2.4 He could be at the back of Fritz' shop, playing Poker game.

2.5 The Narrator was particular about his return journey.

3.1.a For Lutkin's mother

3.1.b. Lutkin's Mother

3.1.c. The hidden agenda behind this was to inform his mother about the situation; so that she could behave accordingly.

3.2 Quick as a cat

3.3 Yes

**VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS.**

1. Why the lawyer is sent to New Mullion? What does he think about the place?

Ans- The lawyer was sent to New Mullion in order to serve the summons on Oliver Lutkins. He was needed as a witness in a law case. The lawyer had expected the place to be a sweet and simple country village.

2. Why did the narrator call his work unpleasant?

Ans. The narrator was sent to serve summons. He had to go to all sorts of dirty and dangerous places. At times, he was also beaten by those very people. That is why he called his work unpleasant.

3. How did the hack driver appear?

ANS. The hack driver looked to be about forty years in age. His face was red. He wore dirty and worn out clothes but he was cheerful.

4. Why does the hack driver offer to ask about Oliver Lutkins?

ANS. The hack driver was none other than Oliver Lutkins himself. He did not wish to take the summons and go as a witness. So, he pretended to be a hack driver. He offered to help the lawyer so that the lawyer could not come to know about him from someone else.

5. 'But he was no more dishonest than I'. Explain.

ANS. The narrator meant to say that the hack driver was as dishonest as him because he was getting paid for riding the narrator on his cart on the pretence of helping him.

6. The narrator was happy though he had not found Lutkins. Why?

ANS. The narrator had hated city life. This ride through the village made him very happy. He was overjoyed to meet the hack driver. So he was happy though he had not found Lutkins.

7. How does the narrator find Lutkins eventually?

ANS. The narrator's companion had seen Lutkins. When the narrator pointed out the hack driver to him, he told him that the hack driver was Lutkins himself. In this way, the narrator found Lutkins eventually.

## **SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (30-40 words)**

1. Why do you think Lutkins' neighbours were anxious to meet the lawyer?

Ans-Lutkins took the lawyer all across the town in search of Lutkins himself. He was able to fool the lawyer with his cooked up stories about Lutkins and other villagers. All this must have become the talk of the town as how a man could fool the other man in his own search. Everyone had seen this happening. So, Lutkins' neighbours were keen to see him as they missed seeing him that day.

2. After his first day's experience with the hack driver the lawyer thinks of returning to New Mullion to practise law. Do you think he would have reconsidered this idea after his second visit?

Ans- Yes, he may have reconsidered his idea of practicing law at New Mullions. He had taken this decision because he was impressed by the noble and friendly nature of Bill. He found that the villagers were nice, innocent and kind. They were far better than the city people who were not so simple and humble. But on the second visit when he realized that Lutkins had fooled him, he would rethink over his idea and would decide not to settle in New Mullion.

3. Do you think the lawyer was gullible? How could he have avoided being taken for a ride?

Ans- Yes, the lawyer was very gullible as he was taken away with whatever he was told by the hack driver. He never thought of cross checking it. The lawyer could have checked everything himself by going to the people himself but he let Bill to do this. He was so impressed by Bill's friendliness and cheerfulness that he never cross checked with what he was told by the Bill and made it easy for the hack driver to fool him.

## **CHARACTER ANALYSIS**

**1. Oliver Lutkins:** Oliver Lutkins is a crook who lives in the country town of New Mullion. Though he lives in a small town, he easily cheats the lawyer who comes to serve a summons on him. He pretends to be Bill Magnuson, the hack driver and manages to cheat the narrator of his money. He manages to convey the lawyer that it is very difficult to trace Lutkins. He takes the lawyer to many shops but does not allow the lawyer to directly talk with the people. Over a few hours, Bill takes the narrator all over the town where they keep missing Lutkins by small periods of time. He is also a friendly person. When the lawyer comes to New Mullion on a second time, Lutkins invites the lawyer for a cup of coffee in his friend's house. Bill painted Lutkins as a dishonest person. He owed money to a lot of people. He had a talent for

dishonesty. Though he lived in a rural town, he managed to trick and mislead a lawyer belonging to the city.

**2. The Narrator:** The narrator is a lawyer who hates city life. He thinks of pursuing a career in a small town. He goes to New Mullion to serve a summons on Oliver Lutkins. We find him gullible, and he is easily misled by Lutkins himself, who poses as the hack driver, Bill. Bill takes money from the lawyer and gives misleading information about Lutkins. He visits a number of places in New Mullion with Bill but is not able to meet Lutkins. Since he visited New Mullion for an important matter, he failed to be careful in carrying out his job. The narrator appears to be a novice and not a seasoned legal mind. He had a romantic view of country (rural) life but was easily conned by crooks in New Mullion.

### **LONG ANSWER TYPE**

**1. In life, people who easily trust others are sometimes made to look foolish. One should not be too trusting. Describe how Oliver Lutkins made a fool of the young lawyer.**

Ans. It is true that in life people who easily trust others are easily made to look foolish. One must remember that not everyone is honest and thus one should not trust everyone blindly. In the story, 'the Hack Driver', Oliver Lutkins using this characteristic of the lawyer makes him a fool, throughout his first visit to the village. First, he introduced himself as Bill at the railway station and assured the lawyer that they would together search for Lutkins. He told the lawyer that he knew most of the places where Lutkins used to hang out. In succession, he took the narrator to Fritz, then to the barber's shop, then to Gray's shop and finally to Lutkins' mother, whom he called a 'terror'. He deceived the lawyer throughout and also made money by taking the lawyer around. Thus, because of Lutkins' desire to not be a witness to a case, he made a plan to fool the gullible lawyer and broke his trust.

**2. 'Appearances are often deceptive'. Comment on the statement in the light of your reading of the story.**

Things are not always what they seem to be. Appearances are often deceptive. The narrator reaches a village in the search of Oliver Lutkins. He meets a hack driver at the station. The driver warns him about Lutkins. He takes him on a tour of the entire village in search of Lutkins. He tells the narrator about his experiences and about the village and its people. The narrator likes him for his helpful and kind nature. He even forgets all about Lutkins. But, the next day he finds out that the hack driver was Oliver Lutkins himself. He realizes that a simple and kind person was a trickster in reality.

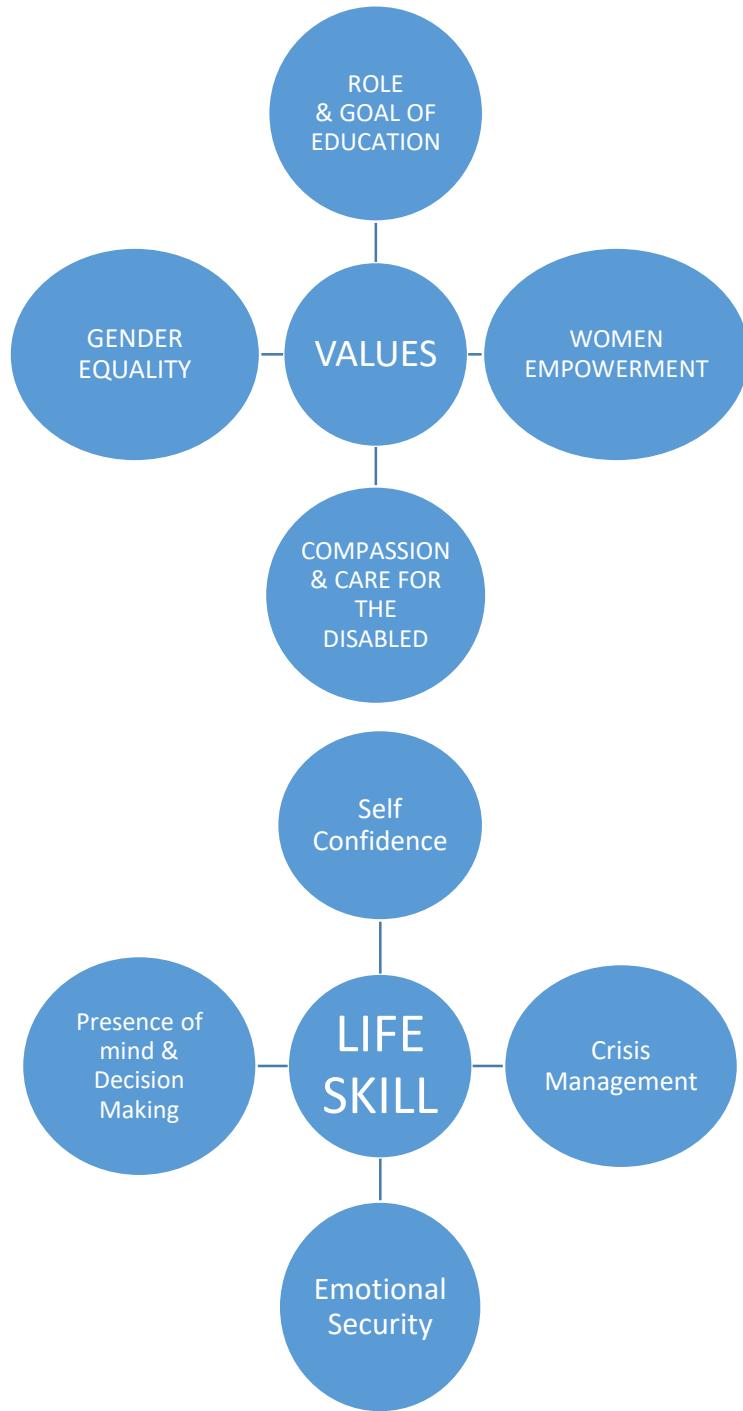
## **BHOLI**

### **SUMMARY**

Bholi is a story written by K.A. Abbas

- The story revolves around a girl, Sulekha who due to an accidental fall and disease in her childhood faces the problem of being dull and looked ugly
- She is always a target for everyone for not being good-looking and intelligent.
- She was never called by her name Sulekha; she was called Bholi for being a simpleton.
- She stammered and had pockmarks on her face which she got when she had contracted smallpox at the age of two.
- She was a laughing stock for everyone.
- Her father Ramlal was always worried about her as it seemed impossible to marry her with her having an ugly face and a dumb mind.
- Her life takes an unexpected turn when she joins a nearby school where the teacher encourages her and helps her to become a learned and a confident person
- On the first day of school, Bholi was frightened to leave her house but when for the first time in her life, she was dressed up and her hair was washed and oiled, she felt that she was to visit a better place.
- One day Bholi's parents decided to marry her off to a lame old man who was a widower but was rich and had not demanded any dowry.
- They thought it to be the best marriage proposal for their dumb daughter and fixed up her marriage.
- Bholi had to give acceptance to the marriage with an unequal match but rejects it when she sees her father pleading to the bridegroom when he demands dowry.
- People accused her of being shameless.
- The wedding party returned. The marriage ceremony ended without Bholi getting married. Her father was grief stricken when the marriage was called off and said that now no one would marry her and what would she do in future.
- To this, she replied that she would take care of her parents when they grew old and would teach in her school.
- Her teacher who was quietly watching all this felt proud of her decision.
- The story shows the rise of a girl against social injustice and how a teacher can help in a child's development by giving support and emotional security.

## CONCEPT MAP



## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQ) One Mark each

1. Who is the author of the story “Bholi”?

- a) KA Abbas
- b) Mark Twain
- c) Guy De Maupassant
- d) Sinclair Lewis

2. What does the word “simpleton” mean ?

- a) simple
- b) foolish
- c) basic
- d) none of the above

3. What was Bholi's real name?

- a) Sulekha
- b) Sudekha
- c) Campa
- d) Chamla

4. What was the purpose of the Tehsildar's village visit?

- a) to inaugurate a girl's school
- b) to address complaints of the village
- c) to meet the people of the village
- d) none of the above

5. What did the Tehsildar ask Ramlal to do?

- a) drop him back to the city
- b) have dinner with him
- c) send his daughters to school
- d) all of the above

6. Towards the end of the story the teacher felt

- a) Independent and Confident
- b) Burden less and free
- c) Sense of contentment and accomplishment
- d) Embarrassed and anxious

7. What was Bholi's first reaction on hearing that she was going to school?

- (a) she cried with tears of joy
- (b) she cried with fear
- (c) she screamed
- (d) she was excited

8. How did she leave for school on the first day?

- (a) sad
- (b) with a ray of hope for new life
- (c) depressed that she'll stay where she is
- (d) worried and tensed

9. Why did Bholi talk very little?

- (a) she stammered
- (b) other kids mimicked her and made fun of her
- (c) she was an introvert
- (d) none of the above

10. Which post did Ramlal hold in the village?

- (a) Sarpanch
- (b) Numberdar
- (c) Tehsildar
- (d) Headmaster

11. What did Bishamber demand as dowry?

- a) two thousand rupees
- b) five thousand rupees
- c) ten thousand rupees
- d) twenty thousand rupees

12. How was Bholi treated in the family?

- a) she was not given new clothes
- b) no one cared to wash her clothes
- c) no one cared to comb her hair
- d) all of the above

13. How did Bholi find the teacher on her very first day in the school?

- a) kind and loving
- b) hard
- c) cruel
- d) arrogant

14. What transformation did education bring in Bholi?

- a) She became fearless
- b) She became courageous
- c) She became confident
- d) All of the above

15. What was the turning point in Bholi's life?

- a) The opening of a primary school
- b) Marriage proposal
- c) An accident
- d) Her mother's words

16. Bholi had refused to get married as

- a) her father couldn't afford the dowry that was demanded
- b) the bridegroom had been greedy and was disrespectful
- c) the bridegroom had insulted her father
- d) her father was getting her married to a man older to her

17. Bholi's teacher has rightly said "Put the fear out of your heart and you will be able to speak like anyone else." (Assertion)

These words of motivation helped Bholi to become bold and confident. – Reason.

- a) Both A and R true and R is the correct explanation of A
- b) Both A and R is true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c) A is false but R is not the correct explanation of A
- d) Both A and R are false

18. Bholi's brothers had been sent to the city to study in schools and later in colleges. Of the daughters, the eldest had already been married. (Assertion)

Irrespective of gender both boys and girls were given education. (Reason)

- a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- b) Both A and R is true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- c) A is correct but R is not the correct explanation of A
- d) Both A and R are false

19. Bholi's teacher played a major role in Bholi's life and made her

- a) Introvert
- b) Dumb cow
- c) Shy
- d) Confident and bold

20. Bholi's parents decided to marry her to a lame old widower because

- a) He was rich
- b) He had not demanded any dowry at the time of proposal
- c) They always thought that no one will marry her
- d) All of the above

### **EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS**

Read the given extracts and answer the questions that follow:

I. What's the matter with you, you fool? Shouted Ramlal. "I am only taking you to school." Then he told his wife, "Let her wear some decent clothes today or else what will the teachers and the other schoolgirls think of us when they see her?"

New clothes had never been made for Bholi. The old dresses of her sisters were passed on to her. No one cared to mend or wash her clothes. But today she was lucky to receive a clean dress which had shrunk after many washings and no longer fitted Champa. She was even bathed and oil was rubbed into her dry and matted hair. Only then did she believe that she was being taken to a place better than her home! When they reached the school, the children were already in their classrooms.”

1. Pick the option that best describes how Bholi felt at the end of her first day in school.

- a) lost and scared
- b) calm and peaceful
- c) elated and peaceful
- d) hopeful and elated

2. Why did Ramlal shout at Bholi? This was because

- a) Bholi had become hysterical and was screaming.
- b) Bholi shouted in fear and pulled her hand away.
- c) Bholi was behaving foolishly and was running away.
- d) Bholi had been behaving very strangely with her father.

3. Why did Bholi receive a clean dress?

- a) Because it was her birthday
- b) Because it was her first day in school
- c) Because she was going to attend a marriage
- d) Because she was going out to meet her friends

4. What did Bholi fear when she was told about being taken to school?

- a) She feared that she was going to be bullied by other students.
- b) She thought her parents were getting rid of her.
- c) She felt that she would be thrown out of the house and sold.
- d) She thought her parents were thinking of ways to throw her out

5. New clothes had never been made for Bholi. The old dresses of her sisters were passed on to her. This shows:

- a) Bholi was loved and cared by all
- b) Bholi was a neglected child
- c) Bholi didn't like to wear new clothes
- d) New clothes didn't look good on her

II. He said to Ramlal, “As a revenue official you are the representative of the government in the village and so you must set an example to the villagers. You must send your daughters to school.”

- Who is ‘he’?
- What example does ‘he’ want Ramlal to set?
- What does the word ‘revenue’ mean?
- What part of speech is the word ‘an’ in the extract?

III. And in her smiling eyes was the light of a deep satisfaction that an artist feels when contemplating the completing of her masterpiece.

- What satisfaction did the teacher have?
- Who was the ‘masterpiece’?
- Find a word from the extract which means ‘thinking deeply’.
- What is the antonym of ‘deep’?

IV. It was a prosperous farmer’s household and there was plenty to eat and drink. All the children except Bholi were healthy and strong. The sons had been sent to the city to study in schools and later in colleges, of the daughters Radha, the eldest, had already been married.

- What did Bholi’s father do?
- How many of his children were healthy and strong?
- Find out a word from the passage which means the same as **enough**.
- Where did Bholi’s father send his sons and why?

V. She remembered how a few days ago their old cow, Lakshmi, had been turned out of the house and sold. N-n-n-n No, no-no-no, she shouted in terror and pulled her hand away from her father’s grip.

- Why did Bholi shout in terror?
- Why did she remember Lakshmi?
- What is the antonym of forgotten in the extract?
- The present tense of sold is

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (SAQ) 3 Marks each**

- Why did Sulekha remain a dull child and came to be known as Bholi, the simpleton?
- The opening of a primary school for girls was a boon for Bholi. Do you agree?
- Why was Bholi reluctant to go to school with her father?

4. "Her heart was throbbing with a new hope and a new life".
  - (i) What was the new hope and new life?
  - (ii) What did she relate the pictures in the school wall to?
5. "Real education is that which helps the learners to be self- confident and make them bold enough to rise against social injustice". Study the pictures given below and justify the statement in the case of Bholi.



PICTURE 1



PICTURE 2

6. What kind of treatment is given to Bholi by her parents? Is it justified?
7. "Don't you worry, Pitaji! In your old age I will serve you and mother". Through this statement the narrator wants to highlight the moral qualities Bholi was imbued with. Based on the reading of the lesson, what made Bholi aware of her rights and how did she use them?
8. "Dowry is a negation of a girl's dignity." Prove this statement in the light of the story 'Bholi'. How can this evil be eradicated from our society?
9. Bholi's teacher helped her to overcome social barriers by encouraging and motivating her. A teacher can transform a student by encouragement and motivation. Do you agree? What do you expect from your teacher?
10. Most of the women in our society suffer silently because they don't know their rights. How does awareness help us? What would you suggest to bring awareness about the rights of women?

#### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (SAQ) 2 MARKS**

1. How did Bholi react when the teacher asked her name?

2. Bholi was fascinated by the walls of the classroom. Why?
3. Why do Bholi's parents accept Bishamber's marriage proposal?
4. Why was Ramlal worried about Bholi and not about his other children?
5. Why did the Tehsildar come to Ramlal's village? What did he ask Ramlal to do?
6. Why was Bholi reluctant to go to school with her father?
7. Why did Bholi look at Bishamber with cold contempt?
8. Why do you think she finds her teacher different from the people at home? Do you think Bholi's teacher played an important role in changing her life?
9. Draw a conclusion as to why Bholi's teacher felt like an artist admiring her masterpiece.
10. Everyone's first day at school is generally filled with fun, joy and happiness. How was Bholi's first day at school?

#### **LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (LAQ) 5 MARKS**

1. "Put the fear out of your heart and you will be able to speak like anyone else." These words of encouragement from the teacher highlight that change of social attitude and encouragement can help a child like Bholi to become confident and face the world bravely. With reference to the story 'Bholi' write how the social attitude towards Bholi made her an introvert. What should be done to help such children to face the world bravely?
2. What social attitudes are presented in the story, 'Bholi'? How does Bholi's teacher help her to overcome these barriers?

#### **OR**

God created this world but teachers create human beings. How does Bholi's teacher succeed in changing the course of her life?

3. Education is definitely a great asset in the life of a woman. How did Bholi, an educated girl face the challenge posed by Bishamber's greed?

4. "Dowry is a negation of the girl's dignity". Explain this statement in the light of the story of 'Bholi'.
5. What values did the teacher display in transforming Bholi into a confident girl?

## ANSWERS

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQ) (ONE MARK EACH)

1. a) KA Abbas
2. b) foolish
3. a) Sulekha
4. a) to inaugurate a girl's school
5. c) send his daughters to school. (Since Ramlal was a Govt. official he should give equal education to his sons and daughters)
6. c) Sense of contentment and accomplishment (Bholi's bold decision of denying to marry the greedy man made the teacher realize that she could mould her into a very confident girl)
7. b) she cried with fear (she was never taken out of her house due to her ugly looks)
8. b) with a ray of hope for new life( her teacher talked to her in such a soothing voice and her motivation and affection instilled a lot of confidence in the girl)
9. b) other kids mimicked her and made fun of her (She was a neglected child and hence lacked confidence)
10. b) Numberdar (A revenue official)
11. b) five thousand rupees
12. d) all of the above
13. a) kind and loving
14. d) All of the above
15. a )The opening of a primary school (It was the education that she received transformed Bholi)
16. b) the bridegroom had been greedy and was disrespectful
17. a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A (The teacher's words motivated Bholi and instilled a lot of confidence in her which helped her to become a bold lady.)
18. c) A is correct but R is not the correct explanation of A (Only her brothers were sent for higher studies)
19. a) Confident and bold

20. d) All of the above

### **EXTRACT BASED QUESTIONS (ONE MARK EACH)**

#### **I.**

1. d) hopeful and elated
2. b) Bholi shouted in fear and pulled her hand away
3. d) hopeful and elated
4. c) She felt that she would be thrown out of the house and sold.
5. b) Bholi was a neglected child

#### **II.**

- (a) 'He' is the Tehsildar.
- (b) The Tehsildar wanted Ramlal to send his daughters to the village school so that other villagers will follow his example by sending their daughters to the school too.
- (c) It means 'tax'.
- (d) It is an article.

#### **III.**

- (a) The teacher had the satisfaction of seeing her pupil (Bholi) turn into a bold girl willing to fight for her rights.
- (b) Bholi was the 'masterpiece.'
- (c) 'Contemplating' from the extract means 'thinking deeply'.
- (d) Its opposite is 'superficial'.

#### **IV.**

- (a) Bholi's father was a revenue officer.
- (b) His six out of seven children were healthy and strong.
- (c) Plenty
- (d) Bholi's father sent his sons to the city to study in schools there and later in colleges.

#### **V.**

- (a) Bholi shouted in terror as she thought that her father was turning her out of her house.
- (b) She remembered her cow Lakshmi because Lakshmi had also been turned out of the house a few days ago.
- (c) **remembered** is the antonym of forgotten in the extract.
- (d) Its present tense is sell.

## **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (SAQ) 3 Marks each**

1. **Answer:** When she was ten months old, she had fallen off the cot on her head and perhaps it had damaged some part of her brain. That was why she remained a backward child and came to be known as Bholi, the simpleton.
2. **Answer:** Yes. The opening of a new primary school in her village was a boon for Bholi because the school and her teacher played an important role in transforming the life of Bholi. The low confident child who would remain quiet and sit with her head bent down into her knees in the class room became a confident, self-reliant girl who could rise to the occasion and take a bold decision her life.
3. **Answer:** Bholi did not know what a school was like. She had never heard about it. When her father held her hand and told her that they were going to school, she got frightened fearing to be dragged out of the house. So she was reluctant to go to school with her father.
4. **Answer:**
  - (i) The new hope was that she would become learned like others. People would listen to her. She would be able to speak without stammering. Now she would not be treated as inferior to others.
  - (ii) She related the pictures of the school wall with the real things around her. The goat was black like the goat of their neighbour. The cow was just like their Lakshmi. The horse was brown just like the Tehsildar's horse.
5. **Answer:**

First picture shows a dull, , neglected poor Bholi.

Second picture shows her transformation in to a confident girl who is bold enough to take a major decision in her life. When her groom demanded money from her father for marrying her she declared before all the wedding guests that she would not have such a mean, greedy and contemptible coward as her husband and threw away the wedding garland in to the fire.

The statement, Real education is that which helps the learners to be self-confident and make them bold enough to rise against social injustice is absolutely true in the case of Bholi because it was her teacher who had made her capable of taking such a bold step in such a crisis in her life.

**6. Answer:**

Bholi was the fourth child in her family. She was different from her other siblings. She had a disfigured face. She had black pock-marks. She was a slow learner. She used to stammer also. She was not given proper treatment at home. The treatment given to Bholi cannot be justified. There should not be any discrimination against children in the family. Parental love and support must be unconditional.

**7. Answer:**

Bholi was an ignorant daughter of Ramlal. Her father fixed her marriage with Bishamber Nath, an aged fellow and father of grown-up children. Bishamber asked for heavy dowry. Bholi showed courage not to marry such a mean and greedy fellow. Bholi promised to serve her parents in their old age. With the impact of education and her teacher's endeavour, she became mature and confident. She became aware of her rights. It was education that made Bholi aware of her rights to raise the voice against dowry.

**8. Answer:**

Dowry is a curse on our society. It has become a monster now. Dowry, no doubt, is a negation of a girl's dignity. Bishamber refused to accept Bholi because of her looks. The moment he saw her face full of pock-marks, he refused to marry her. He did not care for her dignity. But he was ready to marry that ugly girl if her father would give him five thousand rupees as dowry. He was ready to compromise with her looks in exchange of money. It was a sheer negation of Bholi's dignity. Education of girls is the most powerful weapon against this evil.

**9. Answer:**

Bholi's teacher helped her in overcoming social barriers. Bholi was a differently abled girl. She lacked confidence. She had an inferiority complex. When she was sent to school, her teacher transformed her from a dumb cow to a bold girl. No doubt it was the encouragement and motivation by her teacher that helped her. A teacher can transform a slow learner, dumb student to a confident person.

It is not only the knowledge that a teacher should impart, but he/she must boost confidence among his/her students. A word of appreciation by the teacher motivates a student and boosts up his/her morale and confidence. We expect that our teachers treat the children with compassion and sympathy. Their love for their students is a source of inspiration for them.

**10. Answer:**

Yes, it is true that most of the women in our society suffer because they don't know their rights. We all are born equal with equal rights and duties. There should not be any

discrimination between boys and girls. Our constitution has given us equal rights. Unfortunately, there is a lack of awareness and women don't know their rights.

Those women who are aware of their rights have courage to oppose injustice. An educated woman is free from any such exploitation. Bholi in the story was ready to compromise with her fate because she did not know her rights. But when she was educated, she raised her voice against the evil of dowry and refused to marry Bishamber. In my opinion, awareness about the rights can be spread through education only.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (SAQ) 2 MARKS**

**1. Answer:**

Bholi stammered when she spoke and could not tell her name completely when the teacher asked her to do so. So, she broke into tears.

**2. Answer:**

The walls of the classroom had bright and colourful pictures of a horse, a goat, a parrot and a cow. They all looked familiar to Bholi and were like the ones in the village. That is why she was fascinated to see those pictures.

**3. Answer:**

Bholi's parents accepted Bishamber's marriage proposal because they were happy that he was well off and had not asked for dowry.

**4. Answer:**

All other children of Ramlal were healthy and good looking. Bholi was neither intelligent nor good looking. She was a simpleton, she stammered also. Ramlal was extremely worried about her future.

**5. Answer:**

The Tehsildar came to Ramlal's village to inaugurate the primary school. He asked Ramlal to set an example for others by sending his daughters to school.

**6. Answer:**

Bholi did not know what a school was like. She had never heard about it. When her father held her hand and told her that they were going to school, she got frightened fearing to be dragged out of the house. So she was reluctant to go to school with her father.

**7. Answer:**

Bholi looked at Bishamber with cold contempt because he had demanded 5000 to get married to her. Bholi saw how her father was being humiliated; she realised that Bishamber was greedy and exploiting her father due to her ugly looks.

**8. Answer:**

The soft, sweet, soothing voice, sympathetic and encouraging behaviour of her teacher made him much different from the people at home.

Bholi's teacher made her confident, daring and self-respecting person who had the courage to refuse to marry a lame and greedy old man.

9. **Answer:** Bholi's teacher felt like an artist admiring her masterpiece, when she realized how her soothing words, education, and motivation gave confidence to Bholi to face the world and transformed her from a girl who was unsure about herself and a backward child, to a bold and confident girl.
10. **Answer:** The teacher gave her a book having colourful pictures of animals. With every picture was a word in big black letters. The teacher told her that she would be able to read that book in a month. Then she would give her a bigger book. She liked the book very much. Thus she enjoyed her first day in school.

### **LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (LAQ) 5 MARKS**

**1. Answer:**

Bholi was neglected by her parents on account of her looks and lack of intelligence. She used to stammer so the other children made fun of her and mimicked her. As a result she talked very little. It was a daunting task for the teacher to encourage Bholi. The teacher talked to her affectionately and friendly. She assured her if she put the fear out of her heart and she would be able to speak like anyone else.

Through the efforts of years Bholi became a transformed personality. She refused to marry a greedy man who was trying to exploit her father due to her looks. Such children should be constantly encouraged by the parents, teachers and even by the other relations. They must be taught to fight back their handicaps rather to accept it as facts.

**2. Answer:**

Bholi was neglected by her parents on account of her looks and lack of intelligence. She was sent to school as her mother thought her to be a burden and let the teachers at school worry about her. Ironically, the teachers transformed her life completely. God created this world but teachers create human beings.

Bholi did not know what exactly a school was and what happened there, in the class when her teacher asked her name, she stammered and began to cry. She kept her head down throughout the class. The teacher was very encouraging and friendly to her and this made her gain confidence to speak.

She started seeing a ray of hope for a new life. After years of gaining education and with the help of her teacher, Bholi turned into a confident girl. She no longer stammered and could speak properly. She even had the courage to refuse marrying the lame old man because he was greedy and asked money from her father to marry her.

**3. Answer:**

Ironically, Bholi was sent to school as her mother believed she was a burden and let the teachers at the school worry for her. The teacher showed affection and encouraged her to shed her fears. She was assured by her teacher that she would speak like others one day.

Years of hard work transformed Bholi into a bold and confident young woman. Bishamber refused to marry Bholi due to her appearance and demanded five thousand rupees. Bholi saw how her father was humiliated for no reason. She refused to marry a greedy, mean and contemptible coward. She assured her father that she would serve him and her mother in their old age. She had a mission in her life; she would spread the light of education in her village.

**4. Answer:**

Initially Bishamber did not demand dowry to get married to Bholi. He was a widower, having children of the age of Ramlal. But during the marriage ceremony he happened to see the face of Bholi. He bargains if he was given five thousand rupees he will marry the girl. Bholi's father Ramlal placed his turban at his feet but he refused.

A girl is considered a liability in her own natal home due to prevalence of the custom of dowry practice. Some parents are unwilling to give higher education to their daughter as they have to search for highly educated boy for marriages and a better educated boy will demand more dowry which creates unnecessary problems, for parents.

Besides, the boy who receives huge amount of dowry may think of himself as more dignified as having a higher status, greater prestige and more respectful than the girl. Subsequently the girl develops inferiority complex. Fortunately, Bholi refuses to marry greedy Bishamber and decides to serve her parents instead in their old age.

**5. Answer:**

Bholi was neglected by her parents on account of her looks and lack of intelligence. She was sent to school as her mother thought her to be a burden and let the teacher at school worry about her. The teacher in the school asked her to tell her name. She stammered -and began to cry.

The teacher showed her affection and encouraged her in a friendly manner to put aside her fear. Bholi somehow told her name. The teacher assured her that she would be able to speak like everyone else one day. Bholi was surprised. The teacher asked her to come to school regularly. Love and encouragement shown by the teacher brought out drastic changes in Bholi's personality. Within a few years she became so confident that she refused to marry a greedy man.

**KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN, ERNAKULAM REGION**

**SAMPLE PAPER 1(2021-22 TERM 2)**

**ENGLISH -Language and Literature (184)**

**CLASS:X**

**Time allowed:2 hrs**

**Maximum Marks:40**

---

**SECTION A-READING (10 marks)**

**I. Read the passage given below:**

1. In a new finding, climate change has now become a national issue in America as a recent study has deduced that warming-induced drought in the Middle East is leading to increased conflicts over food and water, leading to its consequences on America and the world. The accelerating rate of climate change poses a severe risk to national security and acts as a catalyst for global political conflict. This is the conclusion drawn up by US experts, according to a government report. At the US Center for Naval Analyses, the Military Advisor Board found that climate change had induced drought in the Middle East and Africa. The lack of food and water was affecting the populations of these countries to take recourse to extreme measures. It was escalating long-standing ethnic tensions into violent clashes in the affected countries. In addition, the report predicted that an increase in catastrophic weather conditions worldwide would create more demand for American troops, even as flooding and extreme weather could damage naval ports and military bases.

2. According to official findings, the report signalled that it would influence American foreign policy as well. The report vitalizes situations caused by the massive dislocation or

massive drying up of the waters of the Nile or of the major rivers of India and China. Pentagon officials also feel that the reports would affect military of their country as climate change is having an impact on national security, whether by increasing global instability or by opening the Arctic or by increasing sea level and storm surge close to coastal installations. This is the first major study to draw the link between climate change and national Security. Thus, American leaders are delivering major speeches wherein they are linking up climate change with that of national security. New regulations would also be put in place to cut pollution from coal-fired power options.

3. The report follows a recent string of scientific studies that warn that the effects of climate change are already occurring and that more flooding, droughts, extreme storms, food and water shortages, and damage to infrastructure will occur in the future. There is thus, a link in some quarters between rising sea waters and terrorism. These effects are stress multipliers that will aggravate stressors abroad, such as poverty, environmental degradation, political instability and social tensions.

**Based on your understanding of the passage, answer ANY FIVE questions from the six given below.** **5x1=5**

- i. According to the passage, what is the latest finding regarding climate change?
- ii. In what way does the lack of food and water affect countries in the Middle East and Africa?
- iii. What is unique about the latest report on climate change?
- iv. Increase in catastrophic weather conditions worldwide would create more demand for American troops. Why?
- v. What does the author mean when he says, ‘ethnic tensions’?
- vi. Why are new regulations imposed?

2. Read the following passage carefully:

#### FINANCIAL FRAUDS

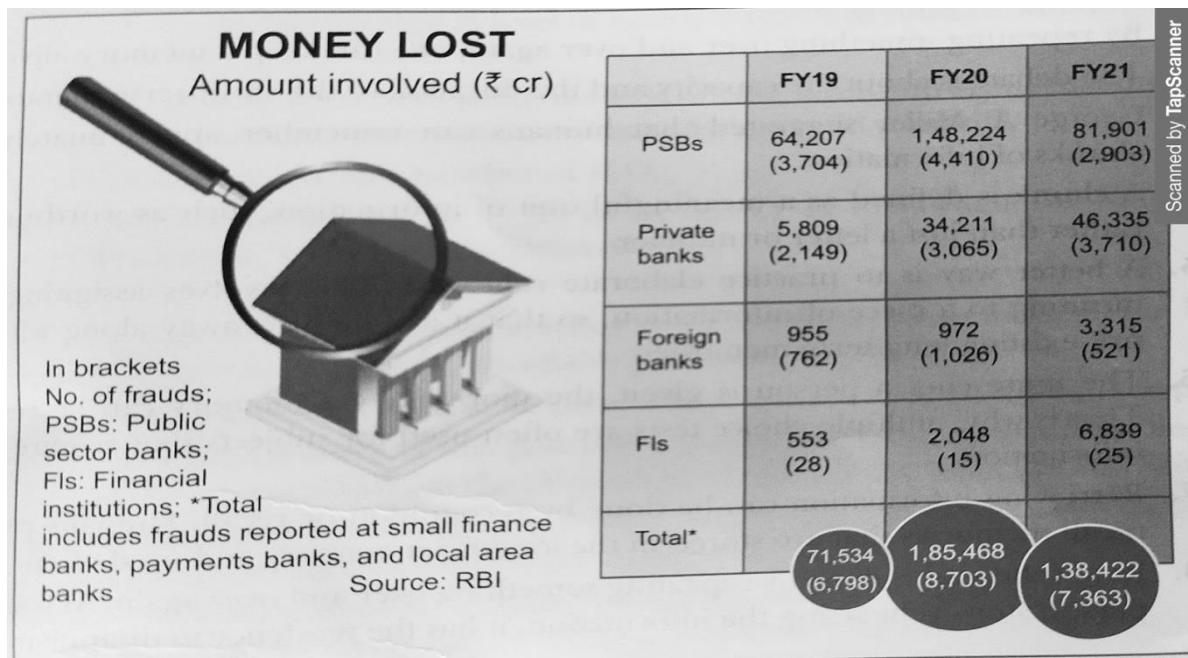
(1) Banks and other financial institutions reported frauds worth 1.38 trillion in 2020-21, down 25% compared to the previous year, when the amount involved was 1.85 trillion, according to the Reserve Bank of India's annual report.

(2) In terms of number, these entities reported 15 percent fewer frauds in 2020-21, at 7,363 compared to the previous year's 8,703 cases. The RBI data takes into account frauds of 1 lakh

and above only. Also, the central bank has changed its accounting year to April-March from July-June, and hence, the latest report only covers nine months (July 2020-March 2021).

(3) In 2019-20, the total fraud cases involving 1 lakh and above had shot up by 28% by volume and 159% by value. The RBI suggests that the share of public sector banks in frauds, both in terms of number and value, has fallen, while that of private sector banks increased in the corresponding period.

4) Furthermore, most frauds are occurring in the loan portfolio of financial institutions, the report says. In 2020-21, the loan portfolio saw 47.5% of the frauds in terms of number and 99% in terms of the amount involved.



(5) "The average time lag between the date of occurrence of frauds and the date of detection was 23 months for the frauds reported in 2020-21. However, in respect of large frauds of ₹100 crore and above, the average lag was 57 months for the same period," the RBI said.

(6) Recently, it was reported that cumulatively, banks in India suffered frauds worth 4.92 trillion as of March 31, 2021, or nearly 4.5 per cent of the total bank credit. This was based on RBI data, which was sought under the Right to Information Act by Saurabh Pandhare. The data showed 90 banks and financial institutions reported a total of 45,613 cases of loan fraud till March 31, 2021.

(7) Also, the RBI report said there was an increase of 31.3% in counterfeit notes detected in the denomination of ₹500 in 2020-21 compared to the previous year. However, there was a decline in counterfeit notes detected in other denominations.

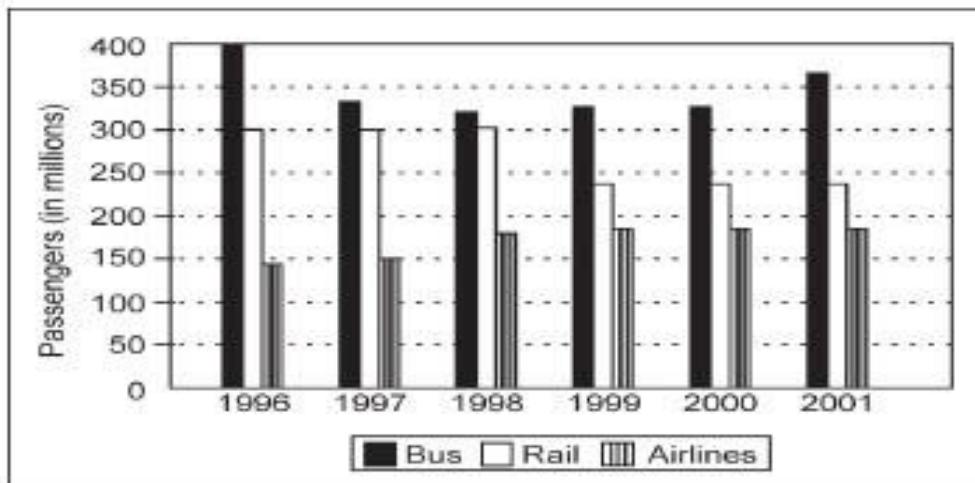
**Based on your understanding of the passage, answer any five out of the eight questions given below.** **5x1=5**

- i. What was the average time lag for the frauds reported in 2020-21?
- ii. Why does the latest report only cover nine months?
- iii. From the data of RBI, what can be concluded about the public sector and private sector banks?
- iv. What was reported by the RBI regarding the counterfeit notes during demonetisation?
- v.. What was sought under the Right to Information Act by Saurabh Pandhare?
- vi. What was the status of fraud cases involving ₹ 1 lakh and above in 2019-20?

## **SECTION B - WRITING & GRAMMAR (10 marks)**

3. Attempt ANY ONE from i and ii.

i) The following bar graph shows the various modes of transport used by the passengers. Write an analytical paragraph based on the graph given below in about 100-120 words.  
5 marks.



ii) You are Sonal/ Samkit of Vidyanjali Public School, Lucknow. You have seen an advertisement in 'The Times of India' related to new batches of 'Astronomy Club' initiated by National Science Center, Lucknow starting from next week onwards.

You wish to join the Club. Write a letter to the Director, enquiring about the venue, duration, fee- structure, activities, transportation etc. Invent other necessary details (100-120 words)

5 Marks

**4. The following passage has not been edited. There is an error in each line against which a blank has been given. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.**

**1\*3=3**

	Error	Correction
Disasters often come suddenly, with a warning,	with	without
and causes great suffering to those	a.-----	-----
which are left alive.	b.-----	-----
Because these tragedies need immediate help and	c.-----	-----
solution which should be provided at the earliest.		

**5. Read the conversation below and complete the passage that follows: 1\*2=2**

Anup: Where can we meet tomorrow?

Atul: I may not be able to meet you tomorrow.

Anup: Are you going to be busy?

Atul: Yes, I will be travelling.

Anup asked Atul where they could meet the next day. Atul replied

a) \_\_\_\_\_ the next day. Anup asked b) \_\_\_\_\_. Atul said that he was as he would be travelling.

## **SECTION C- LITERATURE (20 MARKS)**

**6. Answer ANY SIX questions in 30-40 words each.** **2\*6=12**

- i) Pranjol buried his head in his detective book while Rajvir was eager to look at the beautiful scenery during the train journey. Why was there a difference in their attitude?
- ii) What kind of an image does “languid, emerald sea” evoke?
- iii) What is the relevance of ‘tokens’ in the poem, ‘Animals’? Who brings them to the poet?
- iv) Custard humbly accepts that other animals are braver than him. Give a reason to support your stance that humility is a virtue worth possessing.
- v) One can achieve everything in life with focussed attention, determination and planning. Elucidate the statement with reference to the story “Madame Rides The Bus”
- vi. How did ‘The Travels of Monarch X’ prove a turning point in Richard Enright’s life?

vii. Bholi's heart was overflowing with a 'New hope and a new life'. What does the phrase 'the new hope and the new life' mean?

**7. Answer any two of the following questions in about 120 words each. 4\*2**

- i) Life is full of trials and tribulations which can be overcome by a human being through his own efforts. Explain with reference to Kisa Gotami's life.
- ii) The principle 'forgive and forget', helps a lot in maintaining cordial relations with our neighbours. Do you think Anton Chekov conveys this message through the play 'The Proposal'?
- iii) Pranjol and Rajvir have to attend their friend's wedding at Goa. They are very much excited about attending a Goan wedding for the first time. Develop a conversation between the two, highlighting the events of a Goan wedding based on your understanding of the lesson "Glimpses of India."

You may begin like this:

Pranjol: Hey Rajvir ! I think we are visiting Goa next week. It is a beautiful place with exciting beaches.

Rajvir: Oh! Yes, even I have heard about it.

Pranjol: Have you ever attended a Goan wedding before?

\*\*\*\*\*

**Answer Key**

KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN, ERNAKULAM REGION

SAMPLE PAPER-2021-22(TERM 2)

ENGLISH -Language and Literature(184)

CLASS:X

Time allowed:2 hrs

Maximum Marks:40

---

**ANSWERS**

**SECTION A-READING(10 marks)**

**UNSEEN PASSAGE (1\*5=5)**

- i). Climate change had induced floods in the Middle East.

Climate change poses a severe risk to America's security.

- ii) It had escalated long-standing racial discrimination tension into violent clashes in the affected areas.
- iii) (a) That it would influence American foreign and military policy as climate change is having an impact on their national security Explanation: It is given in the passage that the unique signal that the report gave was that it would have an effect on the American foreign and military policy.
- iv) Because flooding and extreme weather could damage naval ports and military bases
- v) Bad feelings between people from different races Explanation: The term 'ethnicity' means race or roots of a person. Ethnic tension, here, refers to the clash or ill-feeling going on between people of different ethnicities or races.
- vi) to cut pollution from coal-fired power options

## **2.UNSEEN PASSAGE**

- i) The average time lag between the date of occurrence of frauds and the date of detection was 23 months for the frauds reported in 2020-21.
- ii) The Central bank changed its accounting year to April-March from July-June, and hence, the latest report only covers nine months (July 2020-March 2021).
- iii) The share of public sector banks in frauds, both in terms of number and value, has fallen, while that of private sector banks increased in the corresponding period.
- iv) The RBI report said there was an increase of 31.3% in the counterfeit notes detected in the denomination of ₹ 500 in 2020-21 compared to the previous year. However, there was a decline in counterfeit notes detected in other denominations.
- v) Banks in India suffered frauds worth ₹ 4.92 trillion as of March 31, 2021, or nearly 4.5 percent of the total bank credit. This was sought under the Right to Information Act by Saurabh Pandhare.
- vi) In 2019-20, the total fraud cases involving ₹ 1 lakh and above had shot up by 28% by volume and 159% by value.

## **SECTION B - WRITING & GRAMMAR (10 marks)**

- 3.i) The question tests the following writing LOs:  
convey ideas convincingly using appropriate language

- organize the content and structure the ideas logically, sequentially, cohesively ▪ use a range of vocabulary and sentence structure appropriate to the content and context
- use of functional language to show comparison, contrast, emphasis, conclusion etc.

3 marks for content

2 marks for organisation & expression

## ii)content -2

## Expression-2

accuracy-1

### Ref to the source of information

## Conveying interest

venue, duration, fee- structure, activities, transportation etc. (100-120 words)

Any other relevant information.

4.	Error	Correction (1*3=3)
a)	Causes	Cause
b)	Which	Who
c)	Because	Therefore/so

5.

- a) that he might not be able to meet him the next day.(1\*2=2)
- b) if he was going to be busy.

### SECTION C- LITERATURE(20 MARKS)

6. Answer ANY SIX questions in 30-40 words each. 2\*6=12

i. Pranjol had seen the tea gardens many times because his father worked in a tea estate. But it was Rajvir's first visit to Assam who was admiring the scenic beauty outside while Pranjol was busy reading the book as there was nothing new for him to look outside.

ii) It evokes the image of a calm and green sea. The word 'languid' means 'relaxed' which points towards silent water. 'Emerald' is a green coloured gemstone that refers to the green colour of seawater.

iii) Animals show tokens of goodness. They are self-contained, peaceful, thankful and happy creatures. Animals are not unhappy and indeed, bring out tokens of man's good nature, lost long ago. Animals do not grumble about their lives.

iv) Humility is a great virtue as it shows real maturity, confidence and strength. Custard knew of his capabilities and showed it through his action rather than speaking in front of others. He was a humble dragon.

v) The story 'Madam Rides the Bus' proves this fact to be true. Valli develops a strong desire to take a ride on the bus that traveled from her street every day. She meticulously plans her trip. With extreme self-control, Valli saved the money for her trip. Her passion, self-dependence and self-respecting nature helped her to take the journey safely.

vi) Richard was bored with collecting butterflies. At this time, his mother got the book 'The Travels of Monarch X' for him. After reading the book, he studied the migration of butterflies and it opened the world of science to him.

vii) To serve her parents in old age and to teach the students in the same school where she had learnt too much.

7.7. Answer **any two** of the following questions in about 120 words each.  $4*2=8$

i) Kisa went from home to home, asked for mustard seeds- where no one had died, unsuccessful in getting any, distraught on the loss of her only son loses her senses, doesn't accept reality, ignorant of the fact that death is inevitable Lesson- humans are mortal, face pain and suffering, no use grieving

ii) Anton Chekov does convey the message that the principle of 'forgive and forget' helps a lot in maintaining cordial relationship with one's neighbours. Initially, the neighbours in the play, Lomov, Natalya and Chubukov were fighting over petty issues. They were putting important issues behind them and wasting their time by arguing over small things. These arguments slowly developed into fights and they started hurling abuses at one another. This damaged their relationship with each other.

It was when Natalya came to know that Lomov had come to propose her that she left the topic of argument (Oxen Meadows) behind. She also asked for forgiveness from Lomov and requested him to come to the point. Hence it is mandatory to 'forgive and forget' if one wants to have a cordial relationship with others.

iii) Rajvir: No, I haven't but I have read about it.

Pranjol : Then please tell me something about it.

Rajvir: Bread is an important item in Goan weddings. Marriage gifts are meaningless without the sweet bread known as the bol, just as a party or a feast loses its charm without bread.. The lady of the house must prepare sandwiches on the occasion of her daughter's engagement.

Cakes and bolinhos are a must for Christmas as well as other festivals.

Pranjol: Is that why bakers are so famous in Goa?

Rajvir :Yes, bakers have an important place in Goan culture and tradition.These bakers are, even today, known as pader in Goa.

---

## **TERM II SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER-2 (2021-22)**

### **ENGLISH – Language and Literature (184)**

#### **CLASS-X**

##### **General Instructions:**

1. The Question Paper contains THREE sections-READING, WRITING & GRAMMAR and LITERATURE.
2. Attempt questions based on specific instructions for each part.

<b>Q. NO</b>	<b>SECTION A READING (10 marks)</b>	<b>Marks</b>
<b>1.</b>	<p><b>Read the passage given below.</b></p> <p>1. Hormone levels- and hence our moods -may be affected by the weather. gloomy weather can cause depression, but sunshine appears to raise the spirits. In Britain, for example, the dull weather of winter drastically cuts down the amount of sunlight that is experienced which strongly affects some people. They become so depressed and lacking in energy that their work and social life are affected. This condition has been given the name SAD (Seasonal Affective Disorder). Sufferers can fight back by making the most of any sunlight in winter and by spending a few hours each day under special, full- spectrum lamps. These provide more ultraviolet and blue green light than ordinary fluorescent and tungsten lights. Some Russian scientists claim that children learn better after being exposed to ultraviolet light. In warm countries, hours of work are often</p>	

	<p>arranged so that workers can take a break, or even a siesta, during the hottest part of the day. Scientists are working to discover the links between the weather and human beings' moods and performance.</p> <p>2. It is generally believed that tempers grow shorter in hot, muggy Weather. There is no doubt that 'crimes against the person' rise in the summer, when the weather is hotter and fall in the winter when weather is colder. Research in the United States has shown a relationship between temperature and street riots. The frequency of riots rises dramatically as the weather gets warmer, hitting a peak around 27 - 30°C . But is this effect really due to a mood change caused by the heat? Some scientists argue that trouble starts more often in hot weather merely because there are more people in the street when the weather is good.</p> <p>3. Psychologists have conducted studies showing that people become less sceptical and more optimistic when the weather is sunny. However, this apparently does not just depend on the temperature. An American psychologist studied customers in a temperature -controlled restaurant. They gave bigger tips when the sun was shining and smaller tips when it wasn't, even though the temperature in the restaurant was the same. A link between weather and mood is made believable by the evidence for a connection between behaviour and length of the daylight hours. This in turn might involve the level of a hormone called melatonin, produced in the pineal gland in the brain. The amount of melatonin falls with greater exposure to daylight.</p>	
	<p><b>Based on your understanding of the passage, answer <u>ANY FIVE</u> questions from the six given below.</b></p> <p>.</p>	<p><b>1 * 5</b></p>
<p><b>i.</b></p>	<p>What are the two assumed reasons of increased riots in the hotter weather?</p>	<p><b>1</b></p>
<p><b>ii.</b></p>	<p>Rewrite the following sentence replacing the underlined phrase with a word from the third paragraph of the passage.</p> <p>Sameera pondered, <u>as far as one could see</u>, recollecting something from her childhood.</p>	<p><b>1</b></p>
<p><b>iii.</b></p>	<p>How can the sufferers of SAD overcome the effects of the disorder?</p>	<p><b>1</b></p>
<p><b>iv.</b></p>	<p>When the American psychologists conducted a study on the customers of a restaurant, when and why did some give bigger tips?</p>	<p><b>1</b></p>

<b>v.</b>	"In warm countries workers can take a break, or even a siesta, during the hottest part of the day." Mood change is not the only reason of the open-air labourers to refrain from work in the hottest hours. What else can be the reason?	<b>1</b>
<b>vi.</b>	How does the writer justify that it is not just the temperature that makes people less sceptical and more optimistic?	<b>1</b>
<b>Q2</b>	<p><b>Read the passage given below</b></p> <p>Nidhi Companies have been in existence since centuries. They existed even prior to the existence of the Companies Act, 1956.</p> <p>A Nidhi Company, is one that belongs to the non-banking finance sector and is recognized under section 406 of the Companies Act, 2013. Their core business is borrowing and lending money between their members. They are also known as Permanent Fund, Benefit Funds, Mutual Benefit Funds and Mutual Benefit Company. They are regulated by the Ministry of Corporate Affairs, Government of India and are registered under the Companies Act, 2013 (or any earlier enactments). Nidhis are more popular in South India and are highly localized single office institutions. They are mutual benefit societies, because their dealings are restricted only to the members; and membership is limited to individuals. The principal source of funds is the contribution from the members. The loans are given to the members at relatively reasonable rates for purposes such as house construction or repairs and are generally secured. The deposits mobilized by Nidhis are not much when compared to the organized banking sector.</p> <p>Nidhi Company is governed by Nidhi Rules, 2014. They are incorporated in the nature of Public Limited Company and hence, they have to comply with two set of norms, one of Public limited company as per Companies Act, 2013 and another is the Nidhi Rules, 2014. No RBI approval is necessary to register the company, as RBI has specifically exempted this category of NBFC in India to comply its core provisions such as registration with RBI etc. Even though Nidhis are regulated by the provisions of the Companies Act, 2013, they are exempted from certain provisions of the Act, as applicable to other companies, due to limiting their operations within members. The exemptions are contained in the Notification F.No. 2/11/2014-CL. V dated June 5, 2015 issued by the Ministry of Corporate Affairs.</p> <p>For incorporation, the normal procedure for incorporating a public company is required to be complied with such as obtaining availability of name, filing of Memorandum and</p>	

	<p>Articles of Association and other related documents. Care must be taken to see that the Objects Clause of the Memorandum should restrict itself to the object of cultivating the habit of thrift and savings amongst its members, receiving deposits from and lending to its members only for their mutual benefit and for other permitted purposes. The name of the company should end with the words “Nidhi Limited”.</p> <p>After incorporation as a Nidhi, according to Rule 5 of the Nidhi Rules, 2014, every Nidhi shall within a period of one year from the commencement of these rules, ensure that it has</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. not less than two hundred members;</li> <li>ii. Net Owned Funds of ten lakh rupees or more;</li> <li>iii. unencumbered term deposits of not less than ten per cent of the outstanding deposits as specified in rule 14; and</li> <li>iv. Ratio of Net Owned Funds to deposits of not more than 1:20.</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A Nidhi mobilises small savings, mostly of the middle class and disburses loans to eligible borrowers. Owing to their small size and closeness to the customers, disbursement of loans is speedy. This is especially useful in case the borrower is in urgent needs of funds.</li> <li>2. The repayment is guaranteed, as the loans are secured and due to peer pressure, borrowers ensure that loan is repaid on due dates.</li> <li>3. Nidhis offer a higher rate of interest on deposits. This makes it an attractive investment opportunity for people, especially the senior citizens.</li> </ol>	
--	---	--

	<p>4. The Board of Directors of a Nidhi normally consists of senior persons who have experience in handling finances and who are well respected in social circles. This lends credibility to the institution and instils confidence in the minds of borrowers and depositors.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <p><b>CHARACTERISTICS</b></p> <pre> graph TD     A[CHARACTERISTICS] --&gt; B[After commencement of the Companies Act, 2013, no Nidhi shall issue preference shares]     A --&gt; C[They are allowed to open branches subject to compliance with Rule 10 of the Nidhi Rules, 2014, but do not operate on a pan India basis.]     A --&gt; D[They are incorporated as public companies with a minimum paid up equity share capital of '5, 00,000.]     A --&gt; E[Loans may be provided only to its members and should be fully secured.]     A --&gt; F[A director of a Nidhi shall be a member and shall hold office for a term up to 10 consecutive years on the Board of a Nidhi.]     A --&gt; G[Nidhi shall adhere to the prudential norms for revenue recognition and classification of assets in respect of mortgage loans or jewel loans as provided in Rule 20 of the Nidhi Rules, 2014.]   </pre> </div>	
	<p><b>On the basis of your understanding of the passage, answer <u>ANY FIVE</u> questions from the six given below.</b></p> <p>i. What is the main function of the NIDHI COMPANIES? <span style="float: right;">1</span></p> <p>ii. What are Nidhi companies? To which part of India are they popular? <span style="float: right;">1</span></p> <p>iii. What is the procedure for incorporating a Nidhi Company? <span style="float: right;">1</span></p> <p>iv. Explain ANY ONE exemption granted by the Ministry to the Nidhi Companies. <span style="float: right;">1</span></p> <p>v. Give two benefits of incorporating a Nidhi company. <span style="float: right;">1</span></p> <p>vi. How is characteristic number 2 different from characteristic number 6? Explain. <span style="float: right;">1</span></p>	<b>1*5</b>
	<b>SECTION B - WRITING AND GRAMMAR (10 marks)</b>	



	<p>Rahul: where have you planned to go during the summer holidays? I plan to go boating in Dal Lake.</p> <p>Jeevan: Is it safe to go to Kashmir now?</p>	1 1
	Rahul asked Jeevan a) ----- and added that he planned to go boating on Dal Lake. To this Rahul showed his concern by asking b) -----	
	<b>SECTION C- LITERATURE (20 marks)</b>	
<b>6.</b>	<b>Answer ANY SIX questions in 30-40 words each.</b>	<b>2*6</b>
i.	Why does Amanda wish to be a mermaid, an orphan or Rapunzel?	2
ii.	Do you think Belinda and her pets would continue to tease the Dragon after the pirate incident? Supply reasons for your stand.	2
iii.	To seek peace, one has to draw out the arrow of lamentation. State two values projected through the statement.	2
iv.	What are the two Legends about Tea?	2
v.	What does Valli mean when she says, “I was just agreeing with what you said about things happening without our knowledge”?	2
vi.	“I know Oliver’s mother. She’s a terror.” Do you think the speaker was right? Justify your answer.	2
vii.	An experiment even without a solid result brought victory to Ebright in the County Science Fair. How was it different from his previous experience?	2
<b>7.</b>	<b>Answer ANY TWO of the following in about 120 words each.</b>	<b>4*2</b>
i.	Outward appearance of a person is not something to rely upon. The pleasure or pain it gives is transitory. Giving prominence to appearance- either by oneself or by others- was proved to be disastrous for both Matilda and Bishamber Nath. Attempt a critical analysis of ‘The Necklace’ and ‘Bholi’ in the light of this idea.	4
ii.	Valli was on her way to Coorg by the bus and was sitting alone enjoying the scene outside. Rajvir (from glimpses of India) happened to be in the bus heading to Coorg (Kodagu). He was concerned about this small girl of about 8 to 10 years who was there alone. Concerned Rajvir, went up to her to ask about her whereabouts.	4

	Write up a conversation from the above extract. Begin your conversation like this. Rajvir: What happened little child, why are you here alone? Are you aware that this bus is heading to Coorg? And where is your mother?	
iii.	Neighbours must have a cordial relationship which Lomov and Natalya do not have. Describe the first fight between them.	4

### **TERM II SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER-2 (2021-22)**

#### **ENGLISH – Language and Literature (184)**

**Time allowed: 2 Hrs CLASS-X – MARKING SCHEME. Maximum Marks: 40**

<b>Q No.</b>	<b>Sub Q. No</b>	<b>Answer – value points</b> <b>UNSEEN PASSGE 1*5 (<u>ANY 5 OUT OF 6</u>)</b>	<b>Marks for each value point</b>	<b>Total marks for the question</b>
<b>Q1</b>	1	-Mood change caused by the weather -There are more people in the street when the weather is good (partial credit- ½ mark- can be awarded)	1	<b>5</b> (Any five to be attempted) d)
	2	Sameera pondered, <u>apparently</u> , recollecting something from her childhood. (No partial credit)	1	
	3	-Making the most of any sunlight in winter -Spending a few hours each day under special, full-spectrum lamps. (Partial credit- ½ mark- can be awarded)	1	
	4	-They gave bigger tips when the sun was shining - People become less sceptical and more optimistic when the weather is sunny. (Partial credit- ½ mark- can be awarded)	1	
	5	- Physical inability/ tiredness/ sun burn (Or any other valid reason) (No partial credit allowed)	1	

	6	The writer provides the report of a study done by an American psychologist on the behaviour of customers in a temperature -controlled restaurant in sunny and cold times. (Partial credit- ½ mark- can be awarded)	1	
<b>Q2.</b>	1	Nidhi Companies are into borrowing and lending money between their members.	1	<b>5</b> (Any five to be attempted)
	2	Nidhi companies are mutual benefit societies, because their dealings are restricted only to the members. No. They are more popular in South India.	1	
	3	The procedure for incorporating a company is required to be complied with such as obtaining availability of name, filing of Memorandum and Articles of Association and other related documents. The name of the company should end with the words “Nidhi Limited”.	1	
	4	A similar exemption is given to Nidhi Company under Section 136(1) of the Companies Act,2013 wherein notice can be published in the newspaper as aforesaid and the financial statements, instead of sending it to each member holding shares.	1	
	5	<p>Any 2 points may be awarded full marks. 1</p> <p>1. A Nidhi mobilises small savings, mostly of the middle class and disburses loans to eligible borrowers. Owing to their small size and closeness to the customers, disbursement of loans is speedy. This is especially useful in case the borrower is in urgent needs of funds.</p> <p>2. The repayment is guaranteed, as the loans are secured and due to peer pressure, borrowers ensure that loan is repaid on due dates.</p> <p>3. Nidhi's offer a higher rate of interest on deposits. This makes it an attractive investment opportunity for people, especially the senior citizens.</p> <p>4. The Board of Directors of a Nidhi normally consists of senior persons who have experience in handling finances and who are well respected in social circles. This lends</p>	1	

		credibility to the institution and instils confidence in the minds of borrowers and depositors.		
	6	Characteristic 2 states that they are allowed to open branches subject to compliance with Rule 10 of the NIDHI rules, 2014, characteristics number 6 state that Nidhi shall adhere to the prudential norms for revenue recognition and classification of assets in respect of mortgage loans or jewel loans as provided in Rule 20 of the Nidhi Rules, 2014.	1	
<b>Q3.</b>	i.	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Data Analysis</b></p> <p><b>Content-</b></p> <p>Topic sentence identifying the table content – CBSE pass percentage – <b>½ mark</b></p> <p>Comparing the performances of Thiruvananthapuram and Delhi regions with evidences from the table- <b>2 marks</b></p> <p>Concluding sentence, perspective on the performance of the regions – <b>½ mark</b></p> <p><b>Organisation &amp; expression –</b></p>	3	<b>5</b> (Anyone to be attempted)
	ii	<p><b>Placing Order</b></p> <p><b>Content</b></p> <p>Reference to the source of information • Stating what are the requirements/table • Mentioning when to deliver • Information about payment methods and other relevant details like request for discount.</p>	2	
		<p><b>Expression</b></p> <p>appropriate layout of a formal letter viz. addresses, salutation, subscription, and ending.</p> <p>Organised paragraphs</p> <p>Formal tone</p>	2	<b>5</b>
		<b>Accuracy</b>	1	
		Spelling grammar and punctuation		
<b>Q4.</b>		<p><b>Error Correction</b></p> <p>b) became                    become (1mark)</p> <p>c) they                        we                    (1mark)</p> <p>d) didn't                    don't                    (1mark)</p> <p>(½ mark can be given for the identification of the error)</p>	3	<b>3</b>

<b>Q5</b>	Reported Speech  a) where he had planned to go during the summer holidays. – 1 mark  b) if it was safe to go to Kashmir then. - 1 mark (NO partial credit.)	2	<b>2</b>
<b>Q6.</b>	<b>SHORT ANSWERS (6x2=12)</b>  <b>(ANY <u>6</u> OF 7)</b>  Content -1 mark (Value points based on Q asked.)  ➤ Expression- 1 mark  ➤ No marks deducted for exceeding word limit		<b>12</b>
i	Amanda wishes to be a mermaid so she could drift alone by blissfully languid, emerald sea. She yearns to be an orphan so that she is able to roam the sea (streets) and make pattern using her bare feet. Being Rapunzel means she could live carefree on a high tower. Amanda wishes to be these so that she could avoid her suffocating reality.	2	
ii	In my view, Belinda and her pets would never venture to tease the Dragon as they had already witnessed the might of the Dragon (though it continued to be cowardly). In fact, they would now live with an awareness that the Dragon would come to their rescue in case of any danger.	2	
iii	No lamenting can bring someone's dear and near ones back to life. Neither can they stop one's death. Lamenting affects and spoils one's health. He becomes sick and pale. He loses appetite and interest in life. One has to learn that death is inevitable.	2	
iv	Chinese legend: A Chinese emperor always boiled water before drinking it. One day a few leaves of branches burning under the pot fell into the water. It gave a delicious flavour. These were tea leaves.  Indian legend: Bodhi dharma, a Buddhist monk cut off his eyelids because he felt sleepy during meditations. Ten tea plants grew out of his eyelids. These leaves when put in hot water and drunk, banished sleep.	2	
v	Valli's mother said that many things happen around us, but we are usually unaware of them. Valli had gone on a bus ride to town, all alone, and had come back without any harm. She did all	2	

		this without the knowledge of her mother. Hence, she agreed with what her mother said.		
	vi	The speaker was not right.  She was laughing at the frightful retreat of Bill and the lawyer. Later, mother was found talking and laughing with Bill.	2	
	vii	Previous time- Ebright presented slides of frog tissues under a microscope. No experiment was carried out  Second time- a meticulous/organised experiment was conducted though no solid results were drawn.  Real experiments matter rather than a neat display.	2	
<b>Q7.</b>		<b>LONG ANSWERS 4*2</b> <b><u>ANY 2 OF 3</u></b>  Content 2 marks; Expression & Accuracy- 2 marks  It is just a suggestion. Marks may be awarded for any other valid answers.		<b>8</b>
	i.	Students may draw upon the following:  Introduction – irrelevance of physical appearance  The character Bholi- how poke marks were considered as a draw back.  Poke marks- a reason for increased dowry  Bishamber Nath- tried to exploit the poke marks.  Bholi Spoke courageously and denied /rejected the one who tried to exploit her ‘bad’ look. The power to determine her own destiny was within her.  The Necklace- Metilda gave importance for appearance.  Spent a lot of money, borrowed accessories.  The happiness was very short.  Had to sacrifice 10 years of life.	4	
	ii.	Lomov and Natalya meet and rather than proposing to her, he gets off the point. He tells her how he has inherited his land and how he respects her father. He also tells Natalya that his Oxen meadows touch Natalya’s Birchwood. Hearing this, Natalya says that the Oxen Meadows belong to her family. They start arguing about it. Lomov makes it clear that he is talking about the Oxen Meadows that are between her Birchwood’s and Burnt marsh.	4	

		<p>Natalya again insists that they are theirs. Lomov refuses it. He tells her that his aunt's grandmother had given those meadows to her father's grandfather. The peasants used the land for 40 years and started regarding it as their own. Natalya's father comes and he also starts quarrelling with Lomov. They get into an intense argument and resort to name-calling. After some time, Lomov leaves their house.</p>	
	iii.	<p>Valli: I know that this bus is for Kodagu, and I am big enough to travel alone and I have been to town several times, just by myself. And Valli is my name.</p> <p>Rajvir: Oh! What a chatterbox! Myself Rajvir, and young lady, what interested you to travel to this place?</p> <p>Valli: I have heard that people from the town saying that this place is really famous for coffee. So, I wanted to know more about the place.</p> <p>Rajvir: Oh yes! It indeed is known for coffee, and not only this but also the varieties of spices and scenery may please you.</p> <p>Valli: Wow! You know so much about this place! So, are you also here to know more about this place?</p> <p>Rajvir: Well, no, I am heading back from my friend's home. You know, I travelled to Assam and got to know so much about tea from there.</p> <p>Valli: Assam! Why are you on this bus then?</p> <p>Rajvir: Ha-ha, just to meet the people there. And do you know, people there are either of Greek or Arab origin.</p> <p>Valli: Yes, I have heard my teacher say about this, my knowledge about this is really good.</p> <p>Rajvir: Indeed, you're a smart young lady!</p> <p>Valli: You didn't tell me, why are you going to Coorg? Is it your home?</p> <p>Rajvir: Yes, it is my home and do you want to know an interesting fact about Coorg?</p> <p>Valli: Yes, do tell me.</p> <p>Rajvir: Ok, Coorgis can freely carry a gun without being questioned.</p> <p>Valli: Oh my god! Why so?</p> <p>Rajvir: Well, it is because people over here serve for armies so it is quite normal to have it.</p>	4

		Valli exclaimed and they continued to share facts about Coorg and Coffee.		
--	--	---	--	--

**SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER 3 (TERM II)**  
**ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LITERATURE**  
**CLASS – X**

**TIME ALLOWED: 2 HRS.**

**M.M.: 40**

**GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. The question paper contains THREE Sections – READING, WRITING AND GRAMMAR & LITERATURE
2. Attempt questions based on specific instructions for each part.

**SECTION A – READING (10 MARKS)**

1. . Read the following passage carefully.

(1) Often, we are called upon to dress up for a fancy-dress party. A novel option is to dress up and go as a Goth. The original Goths were Germanic people who played a decisive role in the fall of the Roman Empire in Europe, earlier than the 4<sup>th</sup> century. Today, being a Goth has become synonymous with dressing in a particular way, being fond of darkness and music that is different from punk music.

(2) For the fancy dress, one should start with putting on dark makeup, sport an unusual hairstyle, and wear clothes that are fashioned from black velvet, with bits of lace or fishnet fringes here and there. The more authentic look would consist of wearing leather jackets or belts tinged with streaks of scarlet, laced gloves, and a lot of silver jewellery, especially lockets with images of occult figures or writings.

(3) While most Goths wear black outfits, one can even opt for dark red, violet, blue, green or even white. The idea is that one should feel good because if one is not at ease within, then the Goth image will not come through authentically. On the T-shirts, the images of your favourite band, paired with black jeans, would give the right touch. A leather jacket studded with brass buttons or tin tacks, worn over the T-shirt, would be a perfect complement to the Goth look. To ensure that you come home with the ‘best-dressed prize’, you could pull out an old shirt, strip off one of its shoulders or cut off one of its sleeves, so that it hangs in shreds, and shows off your ‘shoulders’, like a true Goth!

4) After the attire, it is the time to turn one's attention to the footwear. Uniform shoes or sneakers are too ordinary. You must totter about on high-heeled sandals without spraining your ankles. Alternately, you could borrow a pair of knee-length black boots, wear it over a pair of fitting black jeans, and smarten it up with brass buckles and studs to give the correct look. The hair, too, must be given a particular type of grooming. Using a wig is a safe alternative, for then one can dye it a black or coppery hue, and ruffle it into an authentic untidy look for the party. A few strokes with a black eye lining pencil across the cheeks and below the eyes will complete the horror effect.

(5) At the final stage, paint your fingernails in the authentic Goth colour: black. It is a striking touch which will identify you as a perfect imitation of an ancient Goth

**Based on your understanding of the passage, answer any FIVE out of the SIX questions given below.**

**5 x 1 = 5 Marks**

1. Who were Goths originally? What does it mean to be a Goth in today's time?
2. In para 2, what has the author suggested to look like a Goth for the fancy dress?
3. 'While most Goths wear black outfits, one can even opt for dark red, violet, blue, green or even white.' What is the idea behind this?
4. What has the author suggested if one wants to come home with the 'best-dressed prize'?
5. How should the hair be styled to get that authentic Gothic look?
6. What should be done at the end to get a perfect image of an ancient Goth?

2. There's no concept of good or bad food in nutrition science. What matters is the amount of food you consume, something that can be measured in terms of portion or size of serving. Portions and sizes vary from country to country and community to community. Large portions are commonly consumed in the advanced economies while smaller size portions are found mostly in developing economies of Africa and Asia.

Incidentally, portion sizes have undergone a considerable change over the years and continue to do so even today. The trend, in general, has been towards consuming larger and larger food portions (expanding waistlines are proof of this). The human mind seems to count the number of portions rather than the portion size. For example, when people say they have only one chapatti for lunch or dinner, they rarely discuss its size.

Short-term studies have also shown that people eat more when confronted with larger portion sizes. A study at a restaurant setting showed that when pasta was served in different portion sizes on different days, people ate larger amounts on being served larger portions, regardless

of the taste. Also, studies show that people do not adjust or eat less in subsequent meals if they have already had larger portions.

Technically a portion means the amount of food you choose to eat at one time – at a restaurant, from a package, or at home. A ‘serving’ size indicates the calories and nutrients in a certain serving listed under a product’s ‘nutrition facts’ or a single unit or commonly regarded unit of food. The serving size is not the recommended amount to be eaten.

Sometimes, the portion size and serving size match; sometimes they don’t. For example, one slice of bread equals one serving of bread. But the number of slices you eat would be the number of portions you have eaten, so if you have eaten two slices, you have consumed two portions.

So how do we recognise what’s the right amount of food to eat on a regular basis? Learn to recognise standard serving sizes as they help you judge how much you are eating. It may also help to compare serving sizes to common objects.

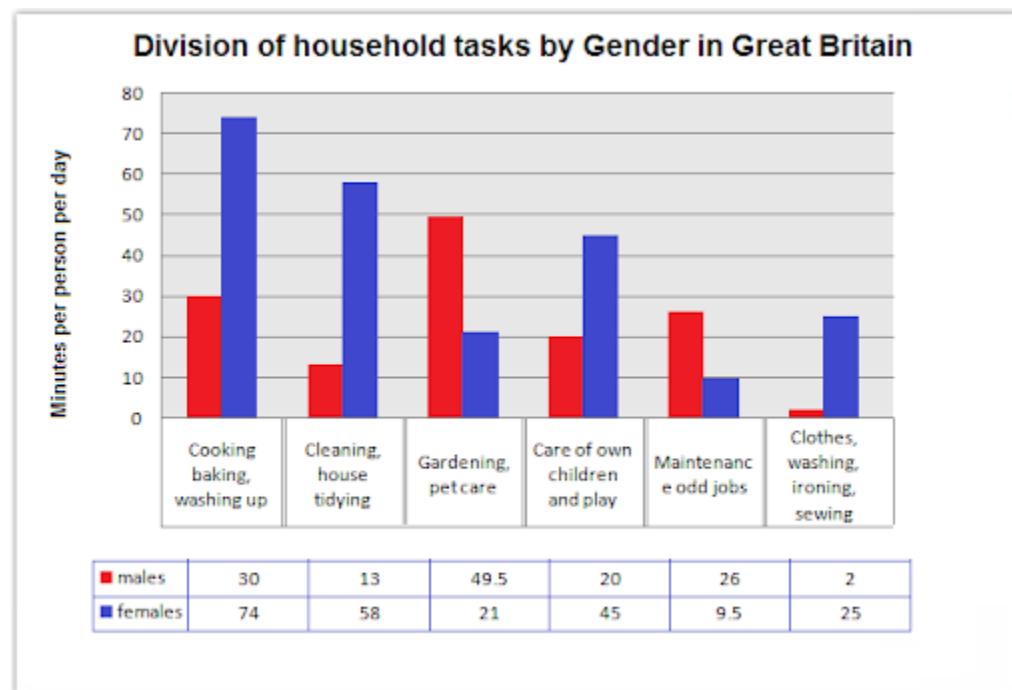
(a) On the basis of your reading of the Passage, answer the following Questions briefly.  $5 \times 1 = 5$

- (i) What does nutrition science believe in?
- (ii) What do expanding waistlines prove?
- (iii) What is the difference between a ‘portion’ and a ‘serving’?
- (iv) What two facts about people’s eating habits have studies shown?
- (v) How do people know what’s the right amount of food to eat?
- (vi) Which word in paragraph 3 is the antonym of ‘avoided’?

### **SECTION B – WRITING AND GRAMMAR (10MARKS)**

3. Attempt ANY ONE from i and ii. **1 x 5=5**  
**Marks**

i. The chart shows the division of household tasks by gender in Great Britain. Write an analytical paragraph describing the chart given in not more than 120 words.



**OR**

ii. As head of the music department of your school, write a letter to Symphony Music House, placing an order for some music instruments like Sitar, Harmonium, Tabla, Tanpura and Guitar. You are Deepthi/Deepak of St. Joseph School, Jowar Street, Guwahati.

4. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. The first one has been done for you. **1x3=3**

	Error	Correction
Longer before Newton, Aristotle and Galileo	Eg., Longer	Long
have done a lot of research on the subject	a)	
of gravity, Aristotle stating that a	b)	
heavier object needn't fall to a earth	c)	
faster than a lighter one.		

5. Read the conversation between an attendant and the principal and complete the passage that follows: **1 x 2=2**

**Marks**

Attendant: A person wants to see you, Sir.

Principal : Did you ask his name?

Attendant: Sorry I didn't. I shall go and ask him.

The attendant told the principal respectfully that a person wanted to see him. The principal asked him a) \_\_\_\_\_. The attendant regretted and told him that he hadn't. He further told the principal that he b) \_\_\_\_\_.

### SECTION C – LITERATURE (20 MARKS)

6. Answer **ANY SIX** questions in 30-40 words each: **2x6=12**

#### **Marks**

- i. The children were fascinated by the baker. How did they show their eagerness?
- ii. How did Kisa Gotami realize that life and death is a process?
- iii. Why does Amanda seem moody most of the time?
- iv. Why do humans keep awake in the dark and weep for their sins while animals never do such things?
- v. How did Ebright's mother help him in becoming a scientist?
- vi. Why do you think Lutkins' neighbours were anxious to meet the lawyer?
- vii. 'Custard humbly accepts that other animals are braver than him'. What quality of Custard is highlighted here?

7. Answer **ANY TWO** of the following in about 120 words each: **4x2=8**

#### **Marks**

- i. Valli's trip to the town in the bus was well planned, leaving no stones unturned. In the light of this statement elaborate the preparation and the execution of the ride.
- ii. The grit and courage shown by Bholi has shown a new hope to the numerous underprivileged women. Elucidate.
- iii. The characters Natalya and Lomov lose their temper on trivial issues. It shows their poor skills at anger management. Suggest some ways that help you in maintaining cordial relationship with people around you.

### ANSWER KEY

Unseen passage 1 x 5 = 5 Marks ( Any 5 out of 6)

1. Goths were Germanic people who played a decisive role in the fall of the Roman Empire in Europe, earlier than the 4<sup>th</sup> century. Goth has become synonymous with

dressing in a particular way, being fond of darkness and music that is different from punk music.

2. For the fancy dress, one should start with putting on dark makeup, sport an unusual hairstyle, and wear clothes that are fashioned from black velvet, with bits of lace or fishnet fringes here and there.
3. The idea is that one should feel good because if one is not at ease within, then the Goth image will not come through authentically.
4. One should pull out an old shirt, strip off one of its shoulders or cut off one of its sleeves.
5. The hair must be given a particular type of grooming. Using a wig is a safe alternative, one can dye it a black or coppery hue, and ruffle it into an authentic untidy look for the party.
6. Paint your fingernails in the authentic Goth colour black.

2. Unseen passage 1 x 5 = 5 Marks ( Any 5 out of 6)

- i) There's no concept of good or bad food in nutrition science. What matters is the amount of food you consume.
- ii) Expanding waistlines proves the consumption of larger and larger food portions.
- iii) A portion means the amount of food you choose to eat at one time. A 'serving' size indicates the calories and nutrients in a certain serving listed under a product's 'nutrition facts'
- iv) Studies have also shown that people eat more when confronted with larger portion sizes and do not adjust or eat less in subsequent meals.
- v) People should learn to recognise standard serving sizes as they help you judge how much you are eating.
- vi) Confronted.

## **SECTION B - WRITING AND GRAMMAR (10 MARKS)**

### **3 Attempt ANY ONE from i and ii. 5\*1**

#### **i) ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH WRITING**

**3 marks for content—**

**2 marks for organisation & expression –**

#### **ii) LETTER OF ENQUIRY**

**Content -2 Expression-2 Accuracy -1**

### **4. EDITING 1\*3 = 3**

Error	Correction
a) have	had
b)stating	stated
c)a	the

Award 1 mark for each correct answer •  $\frac{1}{2}$  mark for identification of the error •  $\frac{1}{2}$  mark for the writing of the correction.

Editing is incomplete if either aspect (identification or rectification) is missing

## 5. PASSAGE COMPLETION - REPORTED SPEECH 1\*2

- a) if/whether he had asked him.
- b) he would go and ask him

Award 1 + 1 mark for each correct answer. NO partial credit.

## SECTION C -LITERATURE (20 MARKS)

### 6. SHORT QUESTIONS 2\*6 = 12 (ANY 6 OF 7)

- i. Children would climb over a chair to peep into the basket full of bread loaves. They would choose the bread bangles very carefully.
- ii. Life and death is a normal process. Death is common to everyone. Those who are born will die one day. Her day dreaming makes her look moody and uninterested.
- iii. She is involved in her world of imagination that she does not pay attention to her mother.
- iv. The poet states that animals are simple and innocent creatures who commit no sins. However, humans commit sins of greed, possession etc.
- v. She encouraged his interest in learning. She took him on trips, bought scientific equipments and helped to learn a lot.
- vi. Almost the entire village had enjoyed Lutkins making a fool of the lawyer. Only the neighbours had not seen the lawyer but had come to know what had happened.
- vii. Custard humbly accepts that other animals are braver than him because of his humility as it helps us in not placing too much importance to our achievements.

### 7. LONG QUESTIONS

4\*2 ANY 2 OF 3

Content 2 marks; Expression & Accuracy 2 marks

- i. Valli's earnest wish to ride on the bus and get the nearest town, meticulous planning, strong will power- saved money-gathered required information-waited patiently-confidence-extraordinary courage-completes the journey.
- ii. Bholi stammered- low self-confidence- the teacher made her aware of her rights- molded her- became confident-bold-attained decision making power- role model.
- iii. We should have a cordial relationship with others in the society we live -control our temper-follow the principle of forgive and forget-be courteous to others -never complaint on trivial things- develop mutual understanding and help each other.

\*\*\*\*\*

